

KEYS TO THE CLASSICS.

CÆSAR'S
COMMENTARIES ON THE GALLIC WAR

Construed Literally and Word for Word.

BY THE LATE

REV. DR. GILES,

RECTOR OF SUTTON, SURREY; FORMERLY FELLOW OF
C. C. COLLEGE, OXFORD.

VOL. I.—BOOKS I.—IV.

SECOND EDITION, REVISED

London:

CORNISH & SONS, 328 HIGH HOLBORN

Textkit - Greek and Latin Learning Tools
<http://www.textkit.com>

CÆSAR'S

COMMENTARIES ON THE GALLIC WAR.

Book I.

1. *Omnis Gallia* all Gaul *divisa est* is divided in *partes tres* into three parts, *quarum* of which *Belgæ* the Belgæ *incolunt* inhabit *unam* one, *Aquitani* the Aquitanians *aliam* another, *qui* [and those] who *lingua* in the language *ipsorum* of themselves *appellantur* are called *Celtæ* the Celts, *nostra* but in our [language] *Galli* Gauls, *tertiam* the third. *Hi omnes* all these *differunt* differ *inter se* among themselves *lingua* in language, *instituti* in institutes, *legibus* in laws. *Flumen Garumna* the river Garonne *dividit* divides *Gallos* the Gauls *ab Aquitanis* from the Aquitanians, *Matrona* the Matronne *et Sequana* and the Seine [divide them] *a Belgis* from the Belgæ. *Horum omnium* of all these *Belgæ* the Belgæ *sunt* are *fortissimi* the bravest *propterea* on this account, *quod* because *longissime absunt* they are the farthest distant *a cultu* from the culture *aque* and *humanitate* the civilization *provinciae* of the province, *mercatoresque* and merchants *commeant* find their way *ad eos* among them *minime sæpe* least frequently, *atque important* bring in *ea* those things *quæ* which *pertinent* tend *ad effeminandos animos* to effeminate their minds; *suntque* and they are *proximi* nearest *Germanis* to the Germans, *qui* who *incolunt* dwell *trans Rhenum* beyond the Rhine, *quibuscum* with whom *gerunt* they wage *bellum* war *continenter* continually. *Qua de causa* for which cause *Helvetii* the Helvetians *quoque* also *precedunt* precede *reliquos Gallos* the

remaining Gauls *virtute* in valour, *quod* because *contendunt* they contend *cum Germanis* with the Germans *fere* almost *quotidianis præliis* in daily battles; *quum* when *aut* either *prohibent* they ward off *eos* them *finibus suis* from their own territories *aut* or *ipsi* themselves *gerunt* carry on *bellum* war *in finibus* in the territories *eorum* of them [the Germans]. *Una pars* one part *eorum* of them, *quam* which *dictum est* it has been mentioned *Gallos* that the Gauls *obtinere* occupy, *capit* takes *initium* its beginning *a flumine Rhodano* from the river Rhone; *continetur* it is contained *Garumna flumine* within the river Garonne, *Oceano* the ocean, *finibus* and the borders *Belgarum* of the Belgæ: *etiam attingit* it also reaches to *flumen Rhenum* the river Rhine *ab Sequanis* from the Sequani *et Helvetiis* and the Helvetians; *vergit* it extends *ad septentriones* towards the north. *Belgæ* the Belgæ *oriuntur* begin *ab extremis finibus* from the farthest borders *Galliæ* of Gaul; *pertinent* they extend *ad inferiorem partem* to the lower part *Rheni fluminis* of the river Rhine; *spectant* they look *in septentriones* towards the north *et orientem solem* and the rising sun *Aquitania* Aquitaine *pertinet* extends *a Garumna flumine* from the river Garonne *ad Pyrenæos montes* to the Pyrenæan mountains, *et* and *eam partem* that part *oceani* of the ocean *quæ* which *est* is *ad Hispanium* next to Spain; *spectat* it looks *inter occasum* between the setting *solis* of the sun *et* and *septentriones* the north.

II. *Orgetorix* Orgetorix *fuit* was *longe* by far *nobilissimus* the most noble *et* and *ditissimus* the most rich *apud Helvetios* among the Helvetians. *Is* he, *Marco Messala* when Marcus Messala *et* and *Marco Pisone* Marcus Piso *consulibus* were consuls, *inductus* induced *cupiditate* by desire *regni* of royal power, *fecit* made *conjuratiōnem* a conspiracy *nobilitatis* of the nobility, *et* and *persuasit* persuaded *civitati* the state, *ut* that *exirent* they should go forth *de finibus suis* from their ter-

ritories *cum omnibus copiis* with all their forces [saying] *esse* that it was *perfacile* very easy, *quum* since *præstarent* they were superior *omnibus* to all *virtute* in valour, *potiri* to gain *imperio* the rule *totius Galliæ* of all Gaul. *Persuasit* he persuaded *iis* them *id* of that *facilius* the more easily *hoc* on this account, *quod* because *Helvetii* the Helvetians *continentur* are shut in *undique* on every side *natura* by the nature *loci* of the place; *una ex parte* on one side *flumine Rheno* by the river Rhine, *latissimo* very broad *atque altissimo* and very deep, *qui* which *dividit* divides *agrum Helvetium* the Helvetian territory *a Germanis* from the Germans; *altera ex parte* on the other side, *monte altissimo* by the very high mountain, *Jura* the Jura; *qui* which *est* is *inter Sequanos* between the Sequani *et Helvetios* and the Helvetians, *tertia* on the third side *lacu Lemano* by the Lemman lake, *et* and *flumine Rhodano* by the river Rhone, *qui* which *dividit* divides *provinciam nostram* our province *ab Helvetiis* from the Helvetians. *His rebus* by these events *fiebat* it came to pass, *ut* that *et* both *vagarentur* they wandered *minus late* less widely, *et* and *possent* could *minus facile* with less ease *inferre* carry on *bellum* war *finitimis* against their neighbours: *qua de causa* for which cause *homines* [those] men *cupidi* desirous *bellandi* of making war *afficiebantur* were affected *magno dolore* with great grief. *Pro multitudine autem* but in proportion to the multitude *hominum* of the people, *et* and *pro gloria* in proportion to their reputation *belli* for war *atque* and *fortitudinis* bravery, *arbitrabantur* they thought *se* that they *habere* had *angustos fines* narrow territories, *qui* which *patebant* extended *in longitudinem* in length *ducenta et quadraginta millia* two hundred and forty thousands *passum* of paces, *in latitudinem* in breadth *centum et octoginta* an hundred and eighty.

III. *Adducti* led on *his rebus* by these things, *et* and *permoti* influenced *auctoritate* by the authority *Orgetorigis* of Orgetorix, *constituerunt* they determined *com-*

parare to procure *ea* those things *quæ* which *pertinerent* might be of use *ad proficiscendum* for their departure; *coemere* to buy up *quam maximum numerum* as large a number as possible *jumentorum* of beasts *et* and *carro- rum* of carts; *facere* to make *sementes* their harvests *quam maximas* as great as possible, *ut* that *copia* the abundance *frumenti* of corn *suppeteret* might suffice in *itinere* on their march; *confirmare* to confirm *pacem* peace *et* and *amicitiam* friendship *cum proximis civitati- bus* with the neighbouring states. *Adeas res conficien- das* to complete those things *duxerunt* they thought *biennium* that the space of two years *esse* was *satis* enough *sibi* for them: *confirmant* they appoint *lege* by law *profectionem* their departure in *annum tertium* for the third year. *Orgetorix* Orgetorix *deligitur* is ap- pointed *adeas res conficiendas* to complete those things. *Is* he, *ubi* when *suscepit* he undertook *legationem* the embassy *ad civitates* to the states, in *eo itinere* during that journey *persuadet* persuades *Castico* Casticus *filio* son *Catamantaledis* of Catamantales, *Sequano* a Sequa- nian, *cujus pater* whose father *obtinuerat* had held *reg- num* the kingdom in *Sequanis* over the Sequani *multos annos* for many years, *et* and *appellatus erat* had been called *amicus* a friend *a Romano senatu* by the Roman senate *populoque* and people, *ut occuparet* to seize on *regnum* the sovereignty in *civitate sua* in his own city, *quod* which *pater* his father *habuerat* had held *ante* be- fore: *itemque* and also *persuadet* he persuades *Dumnor- rigi* Dumnorix, *Æduo* an Æduan, *fratri* brother *Divi- tiaci* of Divitiacus, *qui* who *eo tempore* at that time *obtinebat* held *principatum* the chief place in *civitate* in the state, *ac* and *erat* was *maxime acceptus* most agree- able *plebi* to the common people, *ut conaretur* to endea- vour [to accomplish] *idem* the same thing; *datque* and he gives *ei* to him *filiam suam* his daughter in *matri- monium* for marriage. *Probat* he proves *illis* to them *esse* that it is *perfacile* very easy *factu* to be done, *perficere* to accomplish *conata* [these] attempts, *prop-*

terea on this account *quod* because *ipse* himself *esset* was *obtenturus* about to hold *imperium* the sovereignty *sue civitatis* of his own city; *non esse dubium* that there was no doubt *quin* but that *Helvetii* the Helvetians *plurimum possent* were the most influential [nation] *totius Gallie* of all Gaul; *confirmat* he assures them *se* that he *conciliaturum* will secure *illis* to them *regna* [those] kingdoms *suis copiis* with his own troops *suoque exercitu* and his own army. *Adducti* induced *hac oratione* by this argument, *dant* they give *fidem* a pledge *et* and *juszjurandum* oath *inter se* between themselves, *et* and *regno occupato* if they should seize on the sovereignty, *sperant* they hope *sese* that they *posse* are able *potiri* to make themselves masters *totius Gallie* of all Gaul *per tres populos* by means of three tribes *potentissimos* most powerful *ac firmissimos* and most firm.

IV. *Ut* when *ea res* that circumstance *enunciata est* was told *per indicium* by information *Helvetiis* to the Helvetians, *coegerunt* they compelled *Orgetorigem* *Orgetorix moribus suis* according to their customs *dicere* to plead *causam* his cause *ex vinculis* in chains: *oportebat* it behoved *pœnam* that [this] punishment *sequi* should await him *damnatum* when found guilty, *ut* that *cremaretur* he should be burnt *igni* with fire. *Die constituta* on the appointed day *dictionis* of the pleading *causæ* of his cause, *Orgetorix* *Orgetorix coegit* collected together *undique* from all sides *ad judicium* to the trial *omnem suam familiam* all his family *ad millia decem* amounting to ten thousands *hominum* of persons, *et* and *conduxit* brought together *eodem* to the same place *omnes suos clientes* all his clients *obæratosque* and debtors, *quorum* of whom *habebat* he had *magnum numerum* a great number: *per eos* by means of them *eripuit* he saved *se* himself *ne diceret* from pleading *causam* his cause. *Quum* when *civitas* the state, *incitata* excited *ob eam rem* on account of that matter, *conaretur* was endeavouring *exsequi* to follow up *jus suum* its right *armis* with arms, *magistratusque* and the magistrates

cogerent were collecting *multitudinem* a great number *hominum* of men *ex agris* out of the fields, *Orgetorix* *Orgetorix mortuus est* died: *neque* nor *suspicio* is the suspicion *abest* absent, *ut* as *Helvetii* the Helvetians *arbitrantur* think, *quin* but that *ipse* himself *consciverit* contrived *mortem* death *sibi* for himself.

V. *Post ejus mortem* after his death *Helvetii* the Helvetians *nihilo minus* nevertheless *conantur* try *facere* to do *id* that *quod* which *constituerant* they had determined, *ut exeat* to go forth *e finibus suis* from their territories. *Ubi* when *arbitrati sunt* they thought *se* that they *esse* were *jam* already *paratos* prepared *ad eam rem* for that deed, *incendunt* they set fire to *oppida sua omnia* all their towns. *numero* in number *ad duodecim* amounting to twelve, *vicos* villages *ad quadringentos* amounting to four hundred, *reliqua* the rest *privata ædificia* private buildings: *comburent* they burn up *omne frumentum* all their corn *præter quod* except what *erant portaturi* they were about to carry *secum* with them, *ut* that, *spe* the hope *reditionis* of their return *domum* home *sublata* being removed, *essent* they might be *paratiores* more ready *ad omnia pericula subeunda* to encounter all dangers: *jubent* they bid *quemque* each *efferre* to carry out *domo* from home *sibi* for himself *molita cibaria* ground meal *trium mensium* for three months. *Persuadent* they persuade *Rauracis* the Rauraci, *et* and *Tulingis* the Tulingi, *et* and *Latobrigis* the Latobrigi, *finitimis* their neighbours, *ut* that, *usi* adopting *eodem consilio* the same plan, *exustis oppidis suis* having burnt their towns *vicisque* and villages, *profiscantur* they should set out *una* together *cum iis* with them; *adsiscuntque* and they join *sibi* to them *socios* as allies, *receptos* received *ad se* among them *Boios* the Boii, *qui* who *incoluerant* had dwelt *trans Rhenum* beyond the Rhine, *et* and *transierant* had crossed in *agrum Noricum* into the Noric territory, *oppugnantque* and had besieged *Noreiam* Noreia.

VI. *Erant* there were *omnino* altogether *duo itinera*

two roads *quibus itineribus* by which roads *possent* they could *exire* go forth *domo* from their home: *unum* one *per Sequanos* through the Sequani, *angustum* narrow *et difficile* and difficult, *inter montem Juram* between mount Jura *et* and *flumen Rhodanum* the river Rhone, *qua* where *singuli carri* single carts *ducerentur* could be drawn *via* with difficulty; *mons autem* but the mountain *altissimus* most high *impendebat* hung over, *ut* so that *perpauci* very few *possent* were able *facile* easily *prohibere* to prevent them: *alterum* the other *per provinciam nostram* through our province, *multo facilius* much more easy *atque expeditius* and more expeditious, *propterea* on this account *quod* because *Rhodanus* the Rhone *fluit* flows *inter fines* between the territories *Helvetiorum* of the Helvetians *et* and *Allobrogum* of the Allobroges, *qui* who *nuper* lately *pacati erant* had been tranquillised, *isque* and that [river] *transitur* is crossed *vado* by a ford *nonnullis locis* in several places. *Extremum oppidum* the last town *Allobrogum* of the Allobroges, *proximumque* and the nearest *finibus* to the borders *Helvetiorum* of the Helvetians, *est* is *Geneva* Geneva. *Ex eo oppido* from that town *pons* a bridge *pertinet* reaches over *ad Helvetios* to the Helvetians. *Existimabant* they thought *se* that they *vel* either *persuasuros* would persuade *Allobrogibus* the Allobroges, *quod* because *viderentur* they seemed *nondum* not yet *bono animo* in good feeling in *populum Romanum* towards the Roman people, *vel* or *coacturos* would compel them *vi* by force, *ut paterentur* to suffer *eos* them *ire* to go *per fines suos* through their territories. *Omnibus rebus comparatis* when all things had been prepared *ad profectionem* for their departure, *dicunt* they name *diem* a day, *qua die* on which day *omnes* all *convenient* should come together *ad ripam* to the bank *Rhodani* of the Rhone. *Is dies* that day *erat* was *ante diem quintum* the fifth day before *calendas Apriles* the calends of April, *Lucio Pisone* when Lucius Piso *Aulo Gabinio* [and] Aulus Gabinius *consulibus* were consuls.

VII. *Quum* when *id* that *nunciatum esset* had been told *Cæsari* to Cæsar, *eos* that they *conari* were endeavouring *facere* to make *iter* their journey *per provinciam nostram* through our province, *maturat* he makes haste *proficisci* to set out *ab urbe* from the city, *et* and *contendit* pushes forward *itineribus* by marches *quam maximis* as long as *potest* he is able, *in Galliam ulteriorem* into the Further Gaul, *et* and *pervenit* arrives *ad Genevam* at Geneva. *Imperat* he imposes *toti provinciae* on all the province *quam maximum numerum* as great a number as possible *militum* of soldiers; (*erat* there was *omnino* altogether *una legio* one legion in *Gallia ulteriori* in the Further Gaul :) *jubet* he orders *pontem* the bridge, *qui* which *erat* was *ad Genevam* at Geneva, *rescindi* to be broken down. *Ubi* when *Helvetii* the Helvetians *facti sunt* were made *certiores* acquainted *de ejus adventu* concerning his arrival, *mittunt* they send *ad eum* to him *legatos* ambassadors *nobilissimos* the most noble persons *civitatis* of the state, *cujus legationis* of which emb-assy *Nameius Nameius et* and *Verudoctius Verudoctius obtinebant* held *principem locum* the chief place, *qui dicerent* to say *esse* that it was *in animo sibi* in their intention *facere* to make *iter* their march *per provinciam* through the province, *propterea* on this account *quod* because *haberent* they had *nullum aliud iter* no other road, *rogare* to ask him, *ut* that *liceat* it may be allowed *sibi* them *facere* to do *id* that *ejus voluntate* with his consent. *Cæsar* Cæsar, *quod* because *tenebat* he kept *memoria* in memory *Lucium Cassium* that Lucius Cassius *consulem* the consul *occisum* was slain, *exercitumque ejus* and his army *pulsum* driven back *et* and *missum* passed *sub jugum* beneath the yoke *ab Helvetiis* by the Helvetians, *non putabat* did not think *concedendum* that he ought to give way: *neque* nor *existimabat* did he suppose *homines* that men *inimico animo* of hostile feelings *temperaturos* would refrain *ab injuria* from injury *et maleficio* and damage *data facultate* when the privilege was given to them *itineris faciundi* of making

their journey *per provinciam* through the province. *Tamen* yet, *ut* in order that *spatium* an interval *posset* could *intercedere* intervene, *dum* whilst *militēs* the soldiers, *quos* whom *imperaverat* he had commanded, *convenirent* should come together, *respondit* he answered *legatis* to the ambassadors *se* that he *sumpturum* would take *diem* a day *ad deliberandum* to deliberate; *si* if *vellent* they should wish *quid* any thing, *reverterentur* they should return *ante diem* the day before *Idus Apriles* the Ides of April.

VIII. *Interea* meanwhile *ea legione* with that legion *quam* which *habebat* he had *secum* with him, *militibusque* and the soldiers *qui* who *convenerant* had come together *ex provincia* out of the province, *perducit* he traces *murum* a wall *in altitudinem* to the height *pedum sexdecim* of sixteen feet *fossamque* and a ditch, *a lacu Lemano* from the Lemane lake, *qui* which *influit* flows in *Rhodanum flumen* into the river Rhone, *ad montem Juram* to mount Jura, *qui* which *dividit* divides *fines* the territories *Sequanorum* of the Sequani *ab Helvetiis* from the Helvetians, *millia decem* [a distance of] ten thousands *passuum* of paces. *Eo opere perfecto* when that work was completed, *disponit* he disposes *præsidia* garrisons, *communit* he fortifies *castella* castles; *quo* in order that *possit* he may be able *facilius* the more easily *prohibere* to prevent them, *si* if *conarentur* they should endeavour *transire* to cross *se invito* against his will. *Ubi* when *ea dies* that day, *quam* which *constituerat* he had appointed *cum legatis* with the ambassadors, *venit* had come, *et* and *legati* the ambassadors *reverterunt* returned *ad eum* to him, *negat* he denies *se* that he *posse* can *dare* grant *ulli* to any one *iter* a way *per provinciam* through the province *more* [consistently] with the custom *et* and *exemplo* example *populi Romani* of the Roman people; *et* and, *si* if *conentur* they endeavour *facere* to use *vim* violence, *ostendit* he shows *prohibiturum* that he will prevent it. *Helvetii* the Helvetians, *dejecti* displaced *ea spe* from that hope, *junctis navibus*

having joined ships, *ratibusque compluribus factis* and having made several rafts, *alii* and others of them *conati* having attempted *nonnunquam* sometimes *interdiu* in the day-time, *sæpius* but oftener *noctu* in the night-time, *si i possent* they might be able *perrumpere* to break through, *vadis* by the fords *Rhodani* of the Rhone, *repulsi* when repulsed *munitione* by the fortification *operis* of the work, *et* and *concursu* by the concourse *et telis* and weapons *militum* of the soldiers, *destiterunt* desisted *hoc conatu* from this attempt.

IX. *Relinquebatur* there was left *una via* one way *per Sequanos* through the Sequani, *qua* by which *non poterant* they were not able *ire* to go *propter angustias* on account of its narrowness, *Sequanis invitis* if the Sequani were unwilling. *Quum* when *non possent* they were not able *persuadere* to persuade *his* these *sua sponte* of their own accord, *mittunt* they send *legatos* ambassadors *ad Dumnorigem* to Dumnorix *Æduum* the Æduan, *ut* that *impetrarent* they might obtain it *a Sequanis* from the Sequani *eo deprecatore* by him as mediator. *Dumnorix* Dumnorix *plurimum poterat* had great power *gratia* by favour *et largitione* and by bribery *apud Sequanos* among the Sequani, *et erat* was *amicus* friendly *Helvetiis* to the Helvetians, *quod* because *duxerat in matrimonium* he had led in marriage *filiam* the daughter *Orgetorigis* of Orgetorix *ex ea civitate* out of that city; *et* and, *adductus* induced *cupiditate* by desire *regni* of the kingdom, *studebat* was eager *novis rebus* for a change of affairs, *et volebat* wished *habere* to have *quam plurimas civitates* as many states as possible *obstrictas* bound *sibi* to himself *suo beneficio* by his good service [towards them]. *Itaque* therefore *suscipit* he undertakes *rem* the business, *et impetrat* obtains *a Sequanis* from the Sequani, *ut* that *patiantur* they should permit *Helvetios* the Helvetians *ire* to pass *per fines suos* through their territories: *perficitque* and he brings it to pass *uti* that *dent* they give *obsides* hostages *inter se* one to the other; *Sequani* the Sequani, *ne pro-*

hibeant not to prevent *Helvetios* the Helvetians *itinere* from making their march; *Helvetii* the Helvetians, *ut transeant* to pass *sine maleficio* without damage *et injuria* or injury.

X. *Renunciatur* it is reported *Cæsari* to Cæsar, *esse* that it is *in animo* in the intention *Helvetiis* of the Helvetians *facere* to make *iter* their march *per agrum* through the territory *Sequanorum* of the Sequani *et* and *Æduorum* of the Ædui *in fines* into the territories *Santonum* of the Santones, *qui* who *non longe absunt* are not far distant *a finibus* from the territories *Tolosatum* of the Tolosates, *quæ civitas* which state *est* is situated *in provincia* in the province. *Si* if *id* that *fieret* should take place, *intelligebat* he perceived *futurum* that it would happen *magno cum periculo* with great danger *provinciæ* to the province, *ut* that *haberet* it should have *homines bellicosos* warlike nation, *inimicos* hostile *populi Romani* of the Roman people, *finitimos* bordering *locis* on countries *patentibus* that were exposed *maximè que* and for the most part *frumentariis* producing corn. *Ob eas causas* for those causes *præfecit* he appointed *Titum Labienum* Titus Labienus *legatum* his lieutenant *ei munitioni* over that fortification *quam* which *fecerat* he had made. *Ipsè* he himself *contendit* pushes on *in Italiam* towards Italy *magnis itineribus* by long marches, *conscribitque* and enrolls *ibi* there *duas legiones* two legions, *et* and *educit* leads forth *ex hibernis* out of winter quarters *tres* three, *quæ* which *hiemabant* were wintering *circum Aquileiam* around Aquileia, *et* and *cum his quinque legionibus* with these five legions *contendit* he makes the best of his way *ire* to go *qua* where *iter* the journey *erat* was *proximum* nearest *per Alpes* through the Alps *in ulteriorum Galliam* into the Further Gaul. *Ibi* there *Centrones* the Centrones *et* and *Graioceli* the Graioceli *et* and *Caturiges* the Caturiges, *occupatis locis superioribus* having occupied the higher places, *conantur* endeavour *prohibere* to prevent *exercitum* the army *itinere* from [pursuing their] march.

Pulsis his these being repulsed *compluribus præliis* in several battles, *pervenit* he arrived *die septimo* on the seventh day, *ab Ocelo* from Ocelum, *quod* which *est* is *extremum* the last town *citerioris provinciae* of the nearer province, *in fines* into the territories *Vocontiorum* of the Vocontii, *ulterioris provinciae* [a tribe] of the Further Province: *inde* from thence *ducit* he leads *exercitum* his army *in fines* into the territories *Allobrogum* of the Allobroges, *ab Allobrogibus* from the Allobroges *in Segusianos* to the Segusians; *hi* these *sunt* are *primi* the first *extra provinciam* out of the province *trans Rhodanum* beyond the Rhone.

XI. *Helvetii* the Helvetians *jam* already *transduxerant* had led across *suas copias* their troops *per angustias* through the defiles *et fines* and territories *Sequanorum* of the Sequani, *et* and *pervenerant* had arrived *in fines* into the territories *Æduorum* of the Ædui, *populabanturque* and were wasting *eorum agros* their lands. *Ædui* the Æduans, *quum* when *non possent* they were not able *defendere* to defend *se* themselves *suaque* and their goods *ab iis* from them, *mittunt* send *legatos* ambassadors *ad Cæsarem* to Cæsar *rogatum* to ask *auxilium* help, [saying] *se* that they *omni tempore* at all times *ita meritos esse* had deserved so [well] *de populo Romano* of the Roman people, *ut* that *agri* their lands *non debuerint* ought not *vastari* to be wasted, *liberi* their children *abduci* to be led away *in servitutem* into slavery, *oppida* their towns *oppugnari* to be assailed, *pene* almost *in conspectu* in sight *exercitus nostri* of our army. *Eodem tempore* at the same time *Ambarri* the Ambarri *necessarii* the friends *et consanguinei* and relations *Æduorum* of the Ædui, *faciunt* make *Cæsarem* Cæsar *certiorem* acquainted *sese* that they, *depopulatis agris* now that their lands were wasted, *non facile prohibere* cannot easily ward off *vim* the violence *hostium* of the enemies *ab oppidis* from their towns. *Item* also *Allobroges* the Allobroges, *qui* who *habebant* had *vicos* villages *possessionsesque* and possessions *trans Rhodanum* beyond the

Rhone, *recipiunt* withdraw *se* themselves *fuga* by flight *ad Cæsarem* to Cæsar, *et* and *demonstrant* show *esse nihil reliqui* that nothing remains *sibi* for them *præter* besides *solum* the soil *agri* of the land. *Quibus rebus* by which facts *adductus* induced Cæsar *Cæsar statuit* determined *non expectandum sibi* that he could not wait, *dum* until, *omnibus fortunis* all the property *sociorum* of the allies *consumptis* being consumed, *Helvetii* the Helvetians *pervenirent* should arrive in *Santonas* among the *Santones*.

XII. *Est* there is *flumen* a river, *Arar* the Arar, *quod* which *influit* flows *per fines* through the territories *Æduorum* of the Ædui *et* and *Sequanorum* the Sequani *in Rhodanum* into the Rhone *incredibili lenitate* with incredible smoothness, *ita* so ut that *non possit* it cannot *judicari* be decided *oculis* by the eyes *in utram partem* in which direction *fluat* it flows: *Helvetii* the Helvetians *transibant* crossed *id* it, *junctis ratibus* having joined rafts *ac* and *lintrikus* punts. *Ubi* when Cæsar *Cæsar factus est* was made *certior* informed *per exploratores* by his scouts *Helvetios* that the Helvetians *jam* already *transduxisse* had led across *flumen* that river *tres partes* three divisions *copiarum* of their troops, *quartam vero partem* but that the fourth *part* *esse reliquam* was remaining *citra* on this side of *flumen Ararim* the river Arar, *profectus* having set forth *e castris* from the camp *cum legionibus tribus* with three legions *de tertia vigilia* in the third watch, *pervenit* he arrived *ad eam partem* at that division *quæ* which *nondum transierat* had not yet crossed *flumen* the river. *Aggressus* having attacked *eos* them, *impeditos* embarrassed *et* and *inopinantes* not expecting it, *coincidit* he cuts in pieces *magnam partem* a great part *eorum* of them; *reliqui* the rest *mandarunt* committed *sese* themselves *fugæ* to flight, *atque* and *abdiderunt* buried [themselves] in *proximas silvas* into the neighbouring woods. *Is pagus* that quarter *appellabatur* was called *Tigurinus* the Tigurine: *nam* for *omnis civitas Helvetia* the whole of the Helvetian state

divisa est is divided *in quatuor pagos* into four quarters. *Hic pagus* this quarter *unus* alone, *quum exiisset* when it had sallied forth *domo* from home, *memoria* in the memory *patrum nostrorum* of our fathers, *interfecerat* had slain *Lucium Cassium* Lucius Cassius *consulem* the consul, *et* and *miserat* had sent *ejus exercitum* his army *sub jugum* beneath the yoke. *Ita* thus, *sive* whether *casu* by chance *sive* or *consilio* by the counsel *deorum immortalium* of the immortal gods, *ea pars* that part *civitatis Helvetiæ* of the Helvetian state *quæ* which *intulerat* had brought *insignem calamitatem* a signal calamity *populo Romano* on the Roman people, *princeps* first *persolvit* paid *pænas* the penalty. *Qua in re* in which matter *Cæsar* Cæsar *ultus est* avenged *non solum* not only *publicas injurias* the wrongs of the public, *sed etiam* but also *privatas* his own private ones, *quod* because *Tigurini* the Tigurini *interfecerant* had slain *legatum* the lieutenant *Lucium Pisonem* Lucius Piso *eodem prælio* in the same battle *quo* in which [they had slain] *Cassium* Cassius.

XIII. *Hoc prælio facto* this battle having been fought, *ut* in order that *posset* he might *consequi* overtake *reliquas copias* the remaining forces *Helvetiorum* of the Helvetians, *curat* he takes care *faciendum pontem* to have a bridge made *in Arari* over the Arar, *atque ita* and thus *transducit* he leads over it *exercitum* his army. *Helvetii* the Helvetians, *commoti* disturbed *repentino ejus adventu* by his sudden coming, *quum* when *intelligèrent* they understood *illum* that he *fecisse* had done *uno die* in one day *id* that *quod* which *ipsi* themselves *fecerant* had done *cægerrime* with the greatest difficulty *diebus viginti* in twenty days, *ut transirent* [namely] that they should pass *flumen* the river. *mittunt* send *legatos* ambassadors *ad eum* to him: *cujus legationis* of which embassy *princeps* the leader *erat* was *Divico* Divico, *qui* who *bello Cassiano* in the Cassian war *fuerat* had been *dux* the leader *Helvetiorum* of the Helvetians. *Is* he *agit* treats *ita* thus *cum Cæsare* with .

Cæsar: "Si [that] if *populus Romanus* the Roman people *faceret* would make *pacem* peace *cum Helvetiis* with the Helvetians, *Helvetios* the Helvetians *ituros* would go *in eam partem* in that direction, *atque* and *ad futuros* would be *ibi* there, *ubi* where *Cæsar* Cæsar *constituisset* should have appointed *atque* and *voluisset* should have wished them *esse* to be: *sin* but if *perseveraret* he persevered *persequi* to pursue them *bello* with war, *reminisceretur* let him remember *et* both *veteris incommodi* the old loss *populi Romani* of the Roman people, *et* and *pristinæ virtutis* the ancient valour *Helvetiorum* of the Helvetians. *Quod* because *adortus esset* he had attacked *unum pagum* one division of them *improviso* unexpectedly, *quum* when *ii* those *qui* who *transissent* had crossed *flumen* the river *non possent* were not able *ferre* to bear *auxilium* help *suis* to their friends, *ne* [let him] not *aut* either *tribueret* ascribe it *ob eam rem* on account of that circumstance *magno opere* greatly *virtuti suæ* to his own valour, *aut* or *despiceret* despise *ipsos* them. *Se* that they *ita* so *didicisse* had learnt *a patribus suis* from their fathers *majoribusque* and ancestors, *ut* that *contenderent* they fought *magis* more *virtute* by valour *quam* than *dolo* by cunning *aut* or *niterentur* depended *insidiis* on ambuscades. *Quare* wherefore *ne committeret* let him not bring it to pass, *ut* that *is locus* that place *ubi* where *constitissent* they had stood together *caperet* should take *nomen* its name *ex calamitate* from a calamity *populi Romani* of the Roman people *et* and *interneccione* the total slaughter *exercitus* of the army, *aut* or *proderet* hand down *memoriam* the recollection."

XIV. *Cæsar* Cæsar *respondit* answered *his* to these things *ita* thus: *minus dubitationis* that less hesitation *dari* is allowed *sibi* to him *eo* on this account, *quod* because *teneret* he kept *memoria* in memory *eas res* those things *quas* which *legati Helvetii* the Helvetian ambassadors *commemorassent* had mentioned; *atque* and *eo* on this account *ferre gravius* bore them worse, *quo*

in proportion as *accidissent* they had happened *minsu* less *merito* through the desert *populi Romani* of the Roman people; *qui* who *si* if *fuisse* they had been *conscios* conscious *sibi* to themselves *alienus* *injuriæ* of any wrong, *non fuisse* that it was not *difficile* difficult *cavere* to take precautions, *sed* but *decentum* that they had been deceived *eo* in that particular, *quod* because *neque intelligeret* they neither perceived *commissum* that any fault had been committed *a se* by them *quare* for which *timeret* they should be afraid, *neque putaret* nor thought *timendum* that they ought to be afraid *sine causa* without cause. *Quod si* but [even] if *vellet* he were willing *oblivisci* to forget *veteris contumeliæ* the old reproach, *num posse* was it possible for him *deponere* to lay aside *memoriam* the recollection *etiam recentium injuriarum* of fresh wrongs also. *quod* that *eo invito* against his will *tentassent* they had tried *iter* [to make their] march *per provinciam* through the province *per vim* by force, *quod* that *vexassent* they had harassed *Æduos* the Ædui *quod* that [they had harassed] *Ambarros* the Ambarri, *quod* that [they had harassed] *Allobrogas* the Allobroges? *Quod* that *gloriarentur* they boasted *tam insolenter* so insolently *sua victoria* in their victory. *quodque* and that *admirarentur* they wondered *se* that he *tulisse* had borne *injurias* their injuries *impune* with impunity *tam diu* so long, *pertinere* tend *de eodem* to the same point; *deos enim immortales* for that the immortal gods *consuesse* are accustomed, *quo* in order that *homines* men *quos* whom *velint* they wish *ut eis* to punish *pro scelere eorum* for their wickedness *dolcant* may suffer *ex commutatione* from a change *rerum* of circumstances, *concedere* to grant *his* to them *interdum* sometimes *res secundiores* a more prosperous condition, *et* and *diuturniorem impunitatem* longer impunity. *Quum* since *ea* those things *sint ita* are so, *tamen* nevertheless, *si* if *obsides* hostages *dentur* are given *sibi* to him *ab iis* by them, *uti* so that *intelligat* he may understand *facturos* that they will do *ea* those

things *quæ* which *polliceantur* they promise: *et* and *si* if *satisfaciant* they give satisfaction *Æduis* to the *Ædui* *de injuriis* for the injuries *quas* which *intulerint* they have inflicted *ipsis* on them *sociisque eorum* and their allies, *item* also *si* if *satisfaciant* they give satisfaction *Allobrogibus* to the Allobroges, *sese* he himself *facturum esse* will make *pacem* peace *cum iis* with them. *Divico* *Divico respondit* answered, *Helvetios* that the Helvetians *institutos esse* had been taught *ita* in such a manner *a majoribus suis* by their ancestors *uti* that *consueverint* they have been accustomed *accipere* to receive *non* not *dare* to give *obsides* hostages: *populum Romanum* that the Roman people *esse* are *testem* the witness *ejus rei* of that fact. *Hoc responso dato* when he had given this answer, *discessit* he went away.

XV. *Postero die* on the next day *movent* they move *castra* their camp *ex eo loco* from that place. *Cæsar* *Cæsar facit* does *idem* the same; *præmittitque* and sends forward *omnem equitatum* all the cavalry, *ad numerum* to the number *quatuor millium* of four thousand, *quem* which *habebat* he had *coactum* gathered together *ex omni provincia* from all the province, *et* and *Æduis* from the *Ædui*, *atque* and *eorum sociis* their allies, *qui* who *videant* should see in *quas partes* towards what parts *hostes* the enemy *faciant* make *iter* their march. *Qui* who, *insequuti* having followed *cupidi*us too keenly *novissimum agmen* the rear-guard, *committunt* begin *prælium* battle *cum equitatu* with the cavalry *Helvetiorum* of the Helvetians, *in alieno loco* in a disadvantageous place; *et* and *pauci* a few *de nostris* of our men *cadunt* fall. *Quo prælio* by which battle *Helvetii* the Helvetians *sublati* being elevated, *quod* because *propulerant* they had driven back *quingentis equitibus* with five hundred cavalry *tantum multitudinem* such a great multitude *equitum* of horsemen, *cæperunt* began *subsistere* to conduct themselves *audacius* more audaciously, *et* and *nonnunquam* sometimes *novissimo agmine* with their rear-guard *læssere* to provoke *nostros* our

men *prælio* to battle. *Cæsar* *Cæsar* *continebat* held back *suos* his own men *a prælio* from fighting, *ac* and *habebat* deemed it *satis* enough in *præsentia* for the moment *prohibere* to prevent *hostem* the enemy *rapinis* from plundering, *pabulationibus* from foraging, *populationibusque* and from laying waste the country. *Fece- runt* they made *iter* their march *circiter quindecim dies* for about fifteen days *ita* in such a manner *uti* that *non interesset* there did not pass *amplius* more *quinis* than five *aut* or *senis millibus passuum* six thousand paces *inter novissimum agmen* between the rear-guard *hostium* of the enemy *et* and *nostrum primum* our van-guard.

XVI. *Interim* meantime *Cæsar* *Cæsar* *quotidie* every day *flagitare* demanded *Æduos* from the *Ædui* *frumentum* the corn *quod* which *polliciti essent* they had promised *publice* publicly. *Nam* for *propter* on account of *frigora* the cold, *quod* because *Gallia* Gaul *posita est* is placed *sub septentrionibus* under the north, *ut* as *dictum est* has been said *ante* before, *non modo* not only *frumenta* the crops of corn *non erant* were not *matura* ripe in *agris* in the fields, *sed* but *ne pabuli quidem* not even of fodder *copia* was a quantity *satis magna* sufficiently great *suppetebat* forthcoming. *Minus autem poterat* but he was less able *uti* to use *eo frumento* that corn *quod* which *subvexerat* he had brought *navibus* in ships *flumine Arare* on the river Arar, *propterea* on this account, *quod* because *Helvetii* the Helvetii, *a quibus* from whom *nolebat* he was *unwilling* *discedere* to depart, *averterant* had turned off *iter* their march *ab Arare* from the Arar. *Ædui* the *Ædui* *ducere* [began to] delay *diem* day *ex die* after day, *dicere* [and] to say *conferri* that it was being collected, *comportari* being brought together, *adesse* that it was at hand. *Ubi* when *intellexit* he perceived *se* that he *duci* was delayed *diutius* too long *et* and *diem* that the day *instare* was at hand, *quo die* on which day *oporteret* it would be necessary *metiri* to measure out *frumentum* corn *militibus* to the soldiers, *convocatis eorum principibus* having assembled their chiefs *quorum*

of whom *habebat* he had *magnam copiam* a great number *in castris* in the camp, *in his* among these *Divitiaoc* *Divitiacus et Lisco* and *Liscus*, *qui* who *præerat* was over *summo magistratu* the chief magistracy, (*quem* which [officer] *Ædui* the *Æduans* *appellant* call *Vergobretum* the *Vergobret*, *qui* who *creatur* is created *annuus* for one year, *et* and *habet* has *potestatem* the power *vite* of life *necisque* and death *in suos* over his countrymen) *accusat* he accuses *eos* them *graviter* severely, *quod* because *quum* when *posset* it could *neque* neither *emi* be bought *neque* nor *sumi* be taken *ex agris* from the fields, *non sublevetur* he is not aided *ab iis* by them *tam necessario tempore* at so needful a time, *tam propinquis hostibus* when the enemies are so near; *præsertim* especially *quum* since *suseperit* he has undertaken *bellum* the war *magna ex parte* in a great measure *adductus* induced *eorum precibus* by their entreaties; *queritur etiam* he also complains *multo gravius* much more bitterly, *quod* because *destitutus sit* he has been deserted by them.

XVII. *Tum* then *demum* at last *Liscus* *Liscus*, *adductus* induced *oratione* by the words *Cæsar* of *Cæsar*, *proponit* puts forth *quod* what *antea* before *tacuerat* he had kept silent: *Esse* that there are *nonnullos* some *quorum auctoritas* whose authority *plurimum valeat* is of much weight *apud plebem* with the common people, *qui* who *privatim* privately *plus possint* are more powerful *quam* than *ipsi magistratus* the magistrates themselves. *Hos* that these *seditiosa* by seditious *atque* and *improba oratione* violent language *detertere* prevent *multitudinem* the multitude *ne conferant* from bringing together *frumentum* the corn *quod* which *debeant* they are bound *præstare* to furnish. *Si* if *non possint* they are not able *jam* already *obtinere* to obtain *principatum* the lead *Gallie* of Gaul, *esse satius* that it is better *perferre* to bear *imperia* the authority *Gallorum* of Gauls *quam* than *Romanorum* of Romans; *neque dubitare* nor does he doubt *quin* but that *si* if *Romani* the Romans *superaverint* shall overcome *Helvetios* the *Helvetians*,

erepturi sint they will take away *libertatem* liberty *Æduis* from the Æduans *una* together *cum reliqua Gallia* with the rest of Gaul. *Nostra consilia* that our counsels, *quæque* and the things which *gerantur* are done *in castris* in the camp, *enunciari* are told forth *ab iisdem* by the same persons *hostibus* to the enemies: *hos* that these *non posse* cannot *coerceri* be restrained *a se* by him. *Quin etiam* moreover, *quod* because *enunciavit* he had declared *rem* the affair *Cæsari* to Cæsar *necessario* necessarily *coactus* compelled, *sese intelligere* he understands *quanto cum periculo* with how great danger *fecerit* he has done *id* that; *et* and *ab eam causam* for that cause *tacuisse* he has held his tongue *quamdiu* as long as *potuerit* he has been able.

XVIII. *Cæsar* Cæsar *sentiebat* perceived *Dumnorigem* that Dumnorix *fratrem* the brother *Divitiaci* of Divitiacus *designari* was meant *hac oratione* by this speech *Lisci* of Liscus: *sed* but *quod* because *nolebat* he was unwilling *eas res* that those matters *jactari* should be discussed *pluribus præsentibus* in the presence of many, *seleriter dimittit* he quickly dismisses *concilium* the assembly: *retinet* he keeps *Lisoum* Liscus. *Quærit* he asks *ex solo* from him when alone *ea* those things *quæ* which *dixerat* he had said *in conventu* at the meeting; *dicit* he [Liscus] speaks *liberius* more freely *atque* and *audacius* more boldly. *Quærit* he [Cæsar] asks *eadem* the same things *ab aliis* from others *secreto* in private; *reperit* he discovers *esse* that they are *vera* true; *ipsum Dumnorigem* that Dumnorix himself *esse* is [a man] *summa audacia* of the greatest audacity, *magna gratia* of great influence *apud plebem* among the people *propter liberalitatem* on account of his liberality, *cupidum* desirous *rerum novarum* of a change of things; *habere* that he held *complures annos* for many years *portoria* the tolls *reliquaque omnia vectigalia* and all the other duties *Æduorum* of the Ædui *repempta* rented *parvo pretio* for a small price; *propterea* on this account, *quod* because *illo licente* when he made a bidding *nemo*

no one *audebat* dared *liceri* to bid *contra* against him. *His rebus* that by those means *et auxisse* he had both increased *suam rem familiarem* his paternal property *et* and *comparasse* had obtained *magnas facultates* great resources *ad largiendum* for making gifts; *semper ulere* that he always fed *et* and *habere* kept *circum se* around him *magnum numerum* a great number *equitatus* of cavalry: *neque solum* and not only *largiter posse* had extensive influence at home, *sed etiam* but also *apud finitimas nationes* among the neighbouring nations, *atque* and *causa* for the sake *hujus potentie* of this influence *collocasse* had placed out [in marriage] *matrem* his mother *in Biturigibus* among the Bituriges *homini* to a man *illie* there *nobilissimo* most noble *ac* and *potentissimo* most powerful, *ipsum* [and] himself *habere* had *uxorem* a wife *ex Helvetiis* from the Helvetians; *collocasse* and had placed out *nuptum* in marriage *sororem* his sister *ex matre* on his mother's side *et* and *propinquas suas* his female relations *in alias civitates* among other states. *Favere* that he favoured *et* and *vulpere* wished well *Helvetiis* to the Helvetians *propter* on account of *eam affinitatem* that alliance: *odisse* that he hated *Cæsarem* Cæsar *et* and *Romanos* the Romans *etiam* also *suo nomine* in his own person, *quod* because *potentia ejus* his power *diminuta* was lessened *eorum adventu* by their arrival, *et* and *Divitiacus* Divitiacus, *frater* his brother, *restitutes sit* had been restored *in antiquum locum* to his ancient place *gratiæ* of favour *et* and *honoris* of hono. r. *Si quid* that if anything *accidat* happen *Romanis* to the Romans *venire* he comes *in summam spem* into the greatest hope *obtinerendi regni* of obtaining the kingdom *per Helvetios* by means of the Helvetians, *imperio* [but] that under the dominion *populi Romano* of the Roman people *desperare* he despairs *non modo* not only *de regno* of [obtaining] the kingdom, *sed etiam* but also *de ea gratia* of [keeping] that influence *quam* which *habeat* he has. *Cæsar* Cæsar *reperiebat* found out *etiam* also *inquærendo* by asking, *quod*

[that] whereas *prælium equestre* a battle of cavalry *factum esset* had taken place *adversum* unfavourable *naucis ante diebus* a few days before, *initium* the beginning *ejus fugæ* of that flight *factum* had been made a *Dumnorige* by Dumnorix *atque* and *ejus equitibus* his cavalry, (*nam* for Dumnorix Dumnorix *præerat* was at the head of *equitatu* the cavalry *quem* which *Ædui* the *Æduans miserant* had sent *auxilio* as aid *Cæsari* to Cæsar) *eorum fugâ* that by their flight *reliquum equitatum* the rest of the cavalry *perterritum esse* was frightened.

XIX. *Quibus rebus* which things *cognitis* being known, *quum* when *accederent* there were added *ad has suspiciones* to these suspicions *res certissimæ* most certain facts; *quod* that *transduxisset* he had led over *Helvetios* the Helvetians *per fines* through the territories *Sequanorum* of the Sequani; *quod* that *curasset* he had taken care *obsides dandos* that hostages should be given *inter eos* between them; *quod* that *fecisset* he had done *ea omnia* all those things *non modo* not only *injussu suo* without the order of himself *et civitatis* of the state, *sed etiam* but also *inscientibus ipsis* without their knowledge; *quod* that *accusaretur* he was accused a *magistratu* by the magistrate *Æduorum* of the *Ædui*; *arbitratur* he thought *esse* that there was *satis causæ* sufficient cause *quare* why *aut* either *ipse* himself *animadverteret* should proceed *in eum* against him, *aut* or *jubeat* he should bid *civitatem* the state *animadvertere* to proceed. *Unum* one thing alone *repugnabat* was at variance *his omnibus rebus* with all these things, *quod* that *cognoverat* he had discovered *summum studium* the great zeal *Divitiaci fratris* of his brother Divitiacus *in populum Romanum* towards the Roman people, *summam voluntatem* his great good-will *in se* towards himself, *egregiam fidem* his distinguished loyalty, *justitiam* justice, *temperantiam* and moderation, *nam* for *verebatur* he was afraid *ne lest offenderet* he should offend *animum* the mind *Divitiaci* of Divitiacus *ejus supplicio* by his

punishment. *Itaque* therefore, *priusquam* before that *conaretur* he attempted *quidquam* anything, *jubet* he orders *Divitiacum* Divitiacus *vocari* to be called *ad se* to him, *et* and *quotidianis interpretibus* the daily interpreters *remotis* having been removed, *colloquitur* he converses *cum eo* with him *per Caium Valerium Proculum* by Caius Valerius Proculus *principem* the chief man *provinciae* of the province *Galliae* of Gaul, *familiarum suum* his familiar [friend], *cui* in whom *habebat* he reposed *summam fidem* the greatest confidence *omnium rerum* in all things; *simul* at the same time *commonefacit* he informs him *quæ* what things *dicta sint* were said, *ipso præsentē* in his own presence, *in concilio* in the assembly *Gallorum* of the Gauls *de Dumnorige* about Dumnorix, *et* and *ostendit* he shows him *quæ* what things *quisque* each *dixerit* had said *de eo* about him *apud se* before himself. *Petit* he asks *atque* and *hortatur* exhorts him, *ut* that *sine offensione* without offence *ejus animi* of his mind, *vel* either *ipse* himself, *causa cognita* having heard his cause, *statuat* may pass sentence *de eo* on him, *vel* or *jubeat* bid *civitatem* the state *statuere* to pass sentence.

XX. *Divitiacus* Divitiacus *cum multis lacrymis* with many tears *complexus* having embraced *Cæsarem* Cæsar *cæpit* began *obsecrare* to implore him, *ne statueret* not to decide *quid* anything *gravius* too harsh *in fratrem* against his brother; *se* [saying] that he *scire* knows *illa* that those things *esse* are *vera* true, *nec* nor *quenquam* does any one *capere* feel *plus doloris* more grief *ex eo* from that *quam* than *se* himself, *propterea* on this account, *quod* that *quum* whilst *ipse* himself [Divitiacus] *plurimum posset* had much power *gratia* by his influence *domi* at home, *atque* and *in reliqua Gallia* in the rest of Gaul, *ille* [but] he [Dumnorix] *minimum posset* had very little power *propter adolescentiam* on account of his youth, *crevisset* he had grown *per se* through himself [Divitiacus]; *quibus opibus* which power *ac nervis* and strength *uteretur* he was using *non solum* not only *ad*

minuendam gratiam to lessen his influence, *sed* but *pæne* almost *ad perniciem suam* to his own destruction; *sese tamen* that himself however *commoveri* was troubled *et* both *amore fraterno* by love for his brother, *et* and *existimatione* by the opinion *vulgi* of the common people. *Quod si* but if *quid* anything *gravius* too severe *accidisset* should happen *ei* to him *a Cæsare* from Cæsar, *quum* since *ipse* himself *teneret* held *eum locum* that post *amicitiæ* of friendship *apud eum* with him [Cæsar], *neminem* that no one *existimaturum* would think *factum* that it was done *non sua voluntate* without his consent, *qua ex re* from which circumstance *futurum* it would result, *uti* that *animi* the minds *totius Galliæ* of all Gaul *avertenterentur* would be alienated *a se* from him. *Quum* when *flens* weeping *peteret* he asked *hæc* these things *a Cæsare* from Cæsar *pluribus verbis* with many words, Cæsar Cæsar *prendit* grasps *ejus dextram* his right hand; *consolatus* consoling him. *rogat* he begs him *faciat* to make *finem* an end *orandi* of soliciting him; *ostendit* he points out *ejus gratiam* that his favour *esse* is *tanti* of so much value *apud se* with him [Cæsar], *uti* that *condonet* he pardons *et* both *injuriam* the injury *reipublicæ* of the republic *et* and *suum dolorem* his own grief *ejus voluntati* to his good will *ac* and *precibus* entreaties. *Vocat* he calls *Dumnorigem* Dumnorix *ad se* to him, *adhibet* he introduces *fratrem* his brother; *ostendit* he shows *quæ* what things *reprehendat* he has to reprehend *in eo* in him; *proponit* he sets forth *quæ* what things *ipse* himself *intelligat* is hearing, *quæ* what things *civitas* the state *queratur* complains of: *monet* he advises him *ut vitet* to avoid *omnes suspiciones* all suspicions *in reliquum tempus* for the future time; *dicit* he says *se* that he *condonare* forgives *præteritæ* the past *Divitiaco* to Divitiacus *fratri* his brother. *Ponit* he places *custodes* guards *Dumnorigi* over Dumnorix; *ut* that *possit* he may be able *scire* to know *quæ* what things *agat* he is doing, *quibuscum* and with what persons *loquatur* he speaks.

XXI. *Eodem die* on the same day *factus certior* hav-

ing been made acquainted *ab exploratoribus* by his scouts *hostes* that the enemies *consedis* had posted themselves *sub monte* under a mountain *octo millia passuum* eight thousand paces *ab ipsius castris* from his camp, *misit* he sent [men] *qui cognoscerent* to reconnoitre *qualis* what *esset* was *natura* the nature *montis* of the mountain, *et* and *qualis* what *ascensus* the ascent *in circuitu* in its circuit. *Renunciatum est* it was reported back *esse* that [the ascent] was *facilem* easy. *Jubet* he commands *Titum Labienum* Titus Labienus *legatum* his lieutenant *pro prætore* pro-prætor, *cum duabus legionibus* with two legions, *et iis ducibus* and those guides *qui* who *cognoverant* had reconnoitred *iter* the road, *ascendere* to ascend *summum jugum* the highest ridge *montis* of the mountain *de tertia vigilia* in the third watch of the night: *ostendit* he points out *quid sit* what is the nature *sui consilii* of his plan. *Ipsè* himself *contendit* makes his way *ad eos* towards them *de quarta vigilia* in the fourth watch *eodem itinere* by the same road *quo* by which *hostes* the enemies *ierant* had gone; *mittitque* and he sends *ante se* before him *omnem equitatum* all the cavalry. *Publius Considius* Publius Considius, *qui* who *habebatur* was esteemed *peritissimus* most experienced *rei militaris* in military tactics, *et* and *fuerat* had been *in exercitu* in the army *Lucii Sullæ* of Lucius Sulla *et postea* and afterwards *in Marci Crassi* in [that] of Marcus Crassus, *præmittitur* is sent forward *cum exploratoribus* with persons to explore.

XXII. *Prima luce* at early dawn, *quum* when *summus mons* the top of the mountain *teneretur* was held *a Tito Labieno* by Titus Labienus, *ipse* and himself *abesset* was distant *ab castris* from the camp *hostium* of the enemies *non longius* not farther *mille et quingentis passibus* than fifteen hundred paces, *neque adventus* and neither the arrival *ipsius* of himself *aut* or *Labieni* of Labienus, *cognitus esset* had become known; *Considius* Considius *accurrit* runs up *ad eum* to him *equo admissio* with his horse at speed, *dicit* tells him *montem* that the

mountain. *quem* which *voluerit* he wished *occupari* to be occupied *a Labieno* by Labienus, *teneri* is possessed *ab hostibus* by the enemies; *se* that he *cognovisse* had discovered *id* that *a Gallicis armis* from their Gallic arms *atque insignibus* and ensigns. *Cæsar* *Cæsar subducit* draws off *suas copias* his forces *in proximum collem* to the next hill, *instruit* and draws up *aciem* his line of battle. *Labienus* Labienus, *ut as erat præceptum* had been enjoined *ei* on him *a Cæsare* by Cæsar, *ne committeret* not to venture on *prælium* a battle, *nisi* unless *ipsius copiarum* his own forces *visæ essent* were seen *prope castra* near the camp *hostium* of the enemies, *ut* so that *impetus* an assault *fieret* might be made *in hostes* on the enemies *undique* on all sides *uno tempore* at one time, *monte occupato* having occupied the mountain, *expectabat* awaited *nostros* our men, *abstinebatque* and abstained *prælio* from battle. *Denique* &c. last *multo die* when much of the day [was gone by] *Cæsar* *Cæsar cognovit* learnt *per exploratores* through his scouts, *et* both *montem* that the mountain *teneri* was held *a suis* by his own men, *et* and *Helvetios* that the Helvetians *movisse* had moved *castra* their camp, *et* and *Considium* that Considius, *perterritum* roused *timore* by fear, *renunciasset* had reported *sibi* to him *pro viso* as seen *quod* what *non vidisset* he had not seen. *Eo die* that day, *sequitur* he follows *hostes* the enemies *intervallo* at the distance *quo* at which *consueverit* he had been accustomed, *et* and *ponit* places *castra* his camp *tria millia passuum* three thousand paces *ab eorum castris* from their camp.

XXIII. *Postridie* on the morrow *eius diei* of that day, *quod* because *biduum* the space of two days *omnino* altogether *supererat* remained, *quum* when *oporteret* it was necessary *metiri* to measure out *frumentum* corn *exercitu* to the army, *et* and *quod* because *aberat* he was distant *non amplius* not more *octoginta millibus* than eighty thousand [paces] *a Bibracte* from Bibracte, *oppido* a town *longe* by far *maximo* the greatest *et* and *copiosissimo* most populous *Æduorum* of the Ædui,

existimavit he thought *prospiciendum* that *ae* must take forethought *rei frumentariæ* for the subject of provisions, *avertit* he turned away *iter* his march *ab Helvetiis* from the Helvetians, *ac* and *contendit* proceeded *ire* to go *Bibracte* to Bibracte. *Ea res* that fact *nunciatur* is reported *hostibus* to the enemies *per fugitivos* by deserters *Lucii Æmilii* of Lucius Æmilius, *decurionis* the decurion *equitum Gallorum* of the Gallic cavalry. *Helvetii* the Helvetians, *seu* either *quod* because *existimarent* they thought *Romanos* that the Romans *discedere* went away *a se* from them, *perterritos* alarmed *timore* with fear, *magis* the more *eo* on this account *quod* because *locis superioribus* the highest places *occupatis* being occupied, *non commisissent* they had not ventured on *prælium* a battle *pridie* the day before; *sive* or *eo* on this account, *quod* because *considerent* they [the Helvetians] trusted *posse* that they [the Romans] might *intercludi* be cut off *re frumentaria* from getting provisions, *commutato consilio* having changed their plan, *atque* and *itinere converso* having altered their line of march, *cœperunt* began *insequi* to follow up *ac* and *laccessere* to provoke *nostros* our men *a novissimo agmine* from the rear-guard.

XXIV. *Postquam* when *advertit* he had turned *animum* his mind *id* to that, *Cæsar* Cæsar *subducit* withdraws *copias suas* his forces *in proximum collem* to the nearest hill, *misitque* and sent *equitatum* his cavalry, *qui* which *sustineret* might sustain *impetum* the onset *hostium* of the enemies. *Interim* meanwhile *ipse* himself *in colle medio* on the middle of the hill *instruxit* drew up *aciem* a line *triplicem* three-deep *quatuor legionum veteranarum* of four veteran legions, *ita* in such a way *uti* that *collocaret* he placed *supra se* above him *in summo jugo* on the highest ridge *duas legiones* the two legions *quas* which *conseripserat* he had enrolled *proxime* the most recently *in Gallia citeriori* in Hither Gaul, *et omnia auxilia* and all the auxiliaries; *ac* and *jussit* commanded *totum montem* the whole mountain *compleri* to

be filled *hominibus* with soldiers, *et* and *interea* meanwhile *sarcinas* the baggage *conferri* to be brought together *in unum locum* into one place, *et* and *cum* that [place] *muniri* to be guarded *ab iis* by those *qui* who *constiterant* had established themselves *in acie superiori* in the upper line of battle. *Helvetii* the Helvetians, *sequeuti* having followed *cum omnibus carris* with all their waggons, *contulerunt* heaped up *impedimenta* their baggage *in unum locum* into one place; *ipsi* themselves, *rejecto nostro equitatu* having thrown back our cavalry *confertissima acie* by their dense line, *phalange facta* having made a phalanx, *successerunt* came up *sub nostram primam aciem* under our first line.

XXV. *Cæsar* *Cæsar*, *remotis equis* having removed the horses *primum* first *suo* his own, *deinde* then *omnium* of all *ex conspectu* out of sight, *ut* that, *æquato periculo* by equalizing the danger *omnium* of all, *tolleret* he might cut off *spem* the hope *fugæ* of flight, *cohortatus* having exhorted *suos* his men, *commisit* began *prælium* the battle. *Milites* the soldiers, *missis pilis* having thrown their javelins *e loco superiore* from higher ground, *facile* easily *perfrigerunt* broke through *phalangem* the phalanx *hostium* of the enemies. *Ea disjecta* having dispersed it, *fecerunt* they made *impetum* an onset *in eos* upon them *gladiis districtis* with drawn swords. *Erat* it was *magno impedimento* a great impediment *Gallis* to the Gauls *ad pugnam* in fighting, *quod* that *pluribus eorum scutis* several of their shields *transfixis* being pierced *et* and *colligatis* bound together *uno ictu* by one stroke *pilorum* of the javelins, *quum* when *ferrum* the iron *inflexisset se* had bent itself, *poterant* they were able *neque* neither *evellere* to pluck them out, *neque* nor *pugnare* to fight *satis commode* with sufficient ease *sinistra impedita* with their left arm embarrassed, *ut* so that *multi* many, *du jactato brachio* having long tossed about their arm, *præceptarent* preferred *emittere* to let go *scutum* the shield *manu* from their hand, *et* and *pugnare* to fight *nudo corpore* with their body uncovered

Tandem at length, *defessi* wearied out *vulneribus* with wounds, *cæperunt* they began *et* both *referre* to draw back *pedem* their step, *et* and *quod* because *mons* a mountain *suberat* was at hand *circiter mille passuum* at about a thousand paces, *recipere se* to withdraw themselves *eo* thither. *Capto monte* the mountain having been taken, *et* and *nostris* our men *succedentibus* coming up beneath, *Boii* the Boii *et* and *Tulingi* the Tulingians, *qui* who *claudebant* closed in *agmen* the line of march *hostium* of the enemies *circiter quindecim millibus* with about fifteen thousand *hominum* of men, *et erant* and were *præsidio* a guard *novissimis* to the rearmost, *aggressi* having attacked *nostros* our men *latere aperto* on their open flank *ex itinere* from their march, *circumvenere* surrounded them; *et* and *Helvetii* the Helvetians, *qui* who *receperant* had withdrawn *sese* themselves *in montem* to the mountain, *conspicati* having seen *id* that, *cæperunt* began *rursus* again *instare* to press on *et* and *redintegrare* to renew *prælium* the battle. *Romani* the Romans *intulerunt* advanced *bipartito* in two divisions, *signa* their standards *conversa* facing about: *prima* the first *et* and *secunda acies* the second line, *ut resisteret* to make resistance *victis* to those who had been beaten *ac submotis* and driven back; *tertia* the third, *ut exciperet* to receive *venientes* those who were coming.

XXVI. *Ita* thus *pugnatum est* [the battle] was fought *diu* long *atque* and *aeriter* fiercely. *Quum* when *non possunt* they were unable *diutius* any longer *sustinere* to sustain *impetus* the assaults *nostrorum* of our men, *alteri* the ones *receperunt* withdrew *sese* themselves *in montem* to the mountain *ut* as *cæperant* they had begun, *alteri* the others *contulerunt* betook *se* themselves *ad impedimenta* to their baggage *et* and *carros suos* their waggons. *Nam* for *toto hoc prælio* in all this battle, *quum* although *pugnatum sit* it was fought *ab hora septima* from the seventh hour *ad vesperum* till evening, *nemo* no one *potuit* could *videre* see *hostem* the enemy *aversum* giving way. *Pugnatum est* it was

fought *etiam* also *ad impedimenta* at the baggage *ad multam noctem* for great part of the night, *propterea* on this account *quod* that *objecerant* they had put forward *carros* their waggons *pro vallo* as a rampart, *et* and *coniciebant* cast *tela* their weapons *elo loco superiore* from higher ground *in nostros* against our men *venientes* as they approached, *et* and *nonnulli* some, *inter carros* between the waggons *rotasque* and the wheels, *subiciebant* thrust *mataras* pikes *acand* *tragulas* tragules, *vulnerabantque* and wounded *nostros* our men. *Quum* when *pugnatum esset* the battle had lasted *diu* a long time, *nostri* our men *potiti sunt* gained *impedimentis* the baggage *castrisque* and the camp. *Ibi* there *filia* the daughter *Orgetorigis* of *Orgetorix* *atque* and *unus* one *e filiis* of his sons *captus est* was taken. *Ex eo prælio* from that battle *circiter centum et triginta millia* about an hundred and thirty thousands *hominum* of men *superfuerunt* survived, *ieruntque* and marched *continenter* in a continued body *ea tota nocte* all that night: *intermisso itinere* discontinuing their march *nullam partem* no portion *noctis* of the night, *pervenerunt* they arrived *die quarto* on the fourth day *in fines* in the territories *Lingonum* of the Lingones, *quum* when, *et* both *propter* on account of *vulnera* the wounds *militum* of the soldiers, *et* and *propter* on account of *sepulturam* the burial *occisorum* of the slain, *nostri* our men, *morati* having delayed *triduum* the space of three days, *non potuissent* had not been able *sequi eos* to follow them. *Cæsar* *Cæsar* *misit* sent *litteras* letters *nunciosque* and messengers, *ne juvarent* that they should not help *eos* them *frumento* with corn *neve* nor *alia re* with any other thing: *qui* who *si* if *juvissent* they did help them, *se* that he *habiturum* would hold them *eodem loco* in the same estimation *quo* as *Helvetios* the Helvetians. *Ipse* himself, *triduo intermisso* having waited three days, *cæpit* began *sequi* to follow *eos* them *cum omnibus copiis* with all his forces.

XXVII. *Helvetii* the Helvetians, *adducti* induced

inopia by want *omnium rerum* of all things, *miserunt* sent *ad eum* to him *legatos* ambassadors *de deditioe* about surrendering; *qui* who, *quum* when *convenissent* they had come to *eum* him *in itinere* on his march, *projecissentque* and had thrown *se* themselves *ad pedes* at his feet, *loquutique* and speaking *suppliciter* suppliantly, *petiissent* had asked *pacem* peace *flentes* in tears, *atque* and *jussisset* he had commanded *eos* them *expectare* to await *suum adventum* his coming *in eo loco* in that place *quo* in which *tum essent* they then were, *paruerunt* they obeyed. *Postquam* after that *Cæsar* *Cæsar pervenit* arrived *eo* thither, *poposcit* he demanded *obsides* hostages, *arma* arms, *servos* [and] the slaves *qui* who *perfugissent* had deserted *ad eos* to them. *Dum* whilst *ea* those things *conquiruntur* are sought out, *et* and *conferuntur* are brought together *nocte intermissa* one night having intervened, *circiter sex millia* about six thousands *hominum* of men *ejus pagi* of that quarter *qui* which *appellatur* is called *Verbigenus* the Verbigenian, *sive* whether *perterriti* alarmed *timore* by fear, *ne* lest *traditis armis* when they had given up their arms, *afficerentur supplicio* they should be punished, *sive* or whether *inducti* induced *spe* by the hope *salutis* of safety, *quod* because *in tanta multitudine* in so great a multitude *dediticiorum* of men given up *existimarent* they thought *suam fugam* that their own flight *posse* could *aut* either *occultari* be concealed *aut* or *omnino* altogether *ignorari* be unobserved, *egressi* having gone forth *ex castris* from the camp *Helvetiorum* of the Helvetians *prima nocte* at the beginning of night, *contenderunt* made their way *ad Rhenum* for the Rhine *finesque* and the territories *Germanorum* of the Germans.

XXVIII. *Quod* which *ubi* when *Cæsar* *Cæsar rescivit* learnt, *imperavit* he ordered *his* those *per quorum fines* through whose territories *ierant* they had gone, *uti* that *inquirerent* they should find them out *et* and *reducerent* bring them back, *si* if *vellent* they wished *esse* to be *purgati* free from blame *sibi* towards him; *reducte*

when brought back *habuit* he looked upon them in *numero* in the number *hostium* of enemies; *reliquos omnes* all the others *accepit* he received in *deditionem* to surrender, *traditis obsidibus* when they had delivered hostages, *armis* their arms, *perfugis* [and] deserters. *Jussit* he commanded *Helvetios* the Helvetians, *Tulingos* the Tulingi, *Latobrigos* [and] the Latobrigi, *reverti* to return in *fines suos* into their own territories, *unde* from which *erant profecti* they had set out; *et* and *quod* because *omnibus frugibus* all their crops *amissis* having been lost, *erat* there was *nihil* nothing *domi* at home *quo* by which *tolerarent* they might support *famem* their hunger, *imperavit* he gave orders *Allobrogibus* to the Allobrogians *uti* that *facerent* they should furnish *eis* to them *copiam* abundance *frumenti* of corn: *jussit* he commanded *ipsos* themselves *restituere* to restore *oppida* the towns *vicosque* and villages *quos* which *incenderant* they had burnt. *Fecit* he did *id* that *maxime* mostly *ea ratione* for this reason, *quod* because *noluit* he was unwilling *eum locum* for that place *vacare* to be empty, *unde* from which *Helvetii* the Helvetians *discesserant* had departed; *ne* lest, *propter bonitatem* on account of the goodness *agrorum* of the lands, *Germani* the Germans, *qui* who *incolunt* dwell *trans Rhenum* beyond the Rhine, *transirent* should cross *e suis finibus* from their own territories in *fines* into the territories *Helvetiorum* of the Helvetians, *et* and *essent* should be *finitimi* neighbours *provinciae Galliae* to the province of Gaul *Allobrogibusque* and the Allobrogians. *Concessit* he granted *Æduis* to the Æduans *petentibus* asking him, *ut* that *collocarent* they should place *Boios* the Boii in *finibus* in their territories. *quod* because *erant* they were *cogniti* known *egregia virtute* by their eminent valour; *quibus* to whom *illi* they *dederunt* gave *agros* lands, *quosque* and whom *postea* afterwards *receperunt* they received in *parem conditionem* into an equal condition *juris* of right *atque* and *libertatis* of liberty, *atque* as *ipsi* themselves *erant* were.

XXIX. In castris in the camp *Helvetiorum* of the

Helvetians *tabulae* tablets *confectae* wrought *Græcis literis* in Greek letters *repertae sunt* were found *et* and *relatae* brought *ad Cæsarem* to Cæsar, *quibus in tabulis* in which tablets *confecta erat* had been drawn up *ratio* an account *nominatim* by name, *qui numerus* what number *eorum* of them *exisset* had gone forth *domo* from their home, *qui* who *possent* were able *ferre* to carry *arma* arms, *et item* and also *separatim* separately *pueri* the boys, *senes* the old men, *mulieresque* and the women. *Quarum omnium rerum*, of all which particulars *summa* the sum [total] *erat* was: *Helvetiorum* of Helvetians *ducenta sexaginta tria millia capitum* two hundred and sixty-three thousand heads, *Tulingorum* of Tulingians *triginta sex millia* thirty-six thousand, *Latobrigorum* of Latobrigians, *quatuordecim* fourteen [thousand], *Rauracorum* of Rauraci *viginti tria* twenty-three [thousand], *Boiorum* of Boii *triginta duo* thirty-two [thousand]: *ex his* of these, *qui* [those] who *possent* were able *ferre* to bear *arma* arms, *ad millia nonaginta duo* as many as ninety-two thousand. *Summa* the sum total *omnium* of all *fuerunt* were *ad millia trecenta sexaginta octo* as many as three hundred and sixty-eight thousand. *Censu habito* when the census was made, *ut* as *Cæsar* Cæsar *imperaverat* had ordered, *eorum* of those *qui* who *redierunt* returned *domum* home, *numerus* the number *militum* of soldiers *repertus est* was found to be *centum et decem* an hundred and ten.

XXX. *Bello* the war *Helvetiorum* of the Helvetians *confecto* being completed, *legati* the ambassadors *fere* *totius Galliae* of almost all Gaul, *principes* chief men *civitatum* of the states, *convenerunt* came together *ad Cæsarem* to Cæsar *gratulatum* to congratulate him, [saying] *sese* that they *intelligere* understand, *tametsi* [that] although *repetisset* he had claimed *pœnas* satisfaction *bello* in war *ab iis* from them *pro veteribus injuriis* for the old wrongs *Helvetiorum* of the Helvetians, *tamen* nevertheless *eam rem* that circumstance *accidisse* had happened *non minus* no less *ex usu* to the advan-

tage *terræ Galliæ* of the land of Gaul *quam* than *populi Romani* of the Roman people, *propterea* on this account, *quod* that *Helvetii* the Helvetians *reliquissent* had left *domos suas* their homes, *rebus florentissimis* when their affairs were most thriving, *eo consilio* with this design, *uti inferrent* to carry on *bellum* war *toti Galliæ* on the whole of Gaul, *potirenturque* and obtain *imperio* the government, *deligerentque* and choose *ex magna copia* out of a great abundance *locum* a place *domicilio* for a dwelling, *quem* which *judicassent* they should have deemed *opportunissimum* most fitting *ac* and *fructuosissimum* most fruitful *ex omni Gallia* out of all Gaul, *haberentque* and have *reliquas civitates* the other states *stipendiarias* tributary. *Petierunt* they asked *uti* that *liceret* it might be allowed *sibi* them *inducere* to proclaim *concilium* a council *totius Galliæ* of the whole of Gaul *in diem certam* for a certain day, *facereque* and to do *id* that *voluntatu* with the consent *Cæsaris* of Cæsar; *sese* that they *habere* had *quasdam res* certain matters *quas* which *vellent* they wished *petere* to ask *ab eo* from him *ex communi consensu* by general consent. *Ea re permissa* that thing having been granted, *constituerunt* they appointed *diem* a day *concilio* for a council, *et* and *sanxerunt* made a compact *inter se* among themselves *jurejurando* by oath *nequis* that no one *enunciaret* should tell it *nisi* except *quibus* to whom *mandatum esset* orders should have been given *communi consilio* by common consent.

XXXI. *Eo concilio dimisso* when that council was dismissed, *idem principes* the same princes *civitatum* of the states *qui* who *fuerant* had been *ante* before, *reverterunt* returned *ad Cæsarem* to Cæsar, *petieruntque* and asked *uti* that *liceret* permission might be given *sibi* to them *secreto* privately *agere* to treat *cum eo* with him *de salute sua* concerning their safety *omniumque* and [that] of all. *Ea re impetrata* when that request was obtained, *omnes* all of them *projecerunt* threw *sese* themselves *flentes* weeping *ad pedes* at the feet *Cæsaris*

of Cæsar, [saying] *se* that they *contendere* exerted themselves *et* and *laborare* were anxious for *id* this, *ne ea enuntiarentur* that those things should not be told *quæ* which *dixissent* they had said, *non minus* no less *quam* than *uti* that *impetrarent* they might obtain *ea* those things *quæ* which *vellent* they wished, *propterea* on this account *quod* because, *si* if *enunciatum esset* it should be told forth, *viderent* they saw *se* that they *venturos* would come in *summum cruciatum* into the greatest suffering. *Divitiacus* *Divitiacus* *Æduus* the *Æduan* *loquutus est* spoke *pro his* for them, *esse* that there were *duas factiones* two factions *totius Galliæ* of the whole of Gaul; *Æduos* that the *Æduans* *tenere* held *principatum* the lead *alterius* of one of these, *Arvernos* the *Arvernians* *alterius* of the other. *Quum* that since *hi* these *contenderent* strove *tantopere* so earnestly *inter se* between themselves *de potentatu* for power *multos annos* during many years, *factum esse* it had come to pass, *uti* that *Germani* the Germans *arcesserentur* were fetched *mercede* on hire *ab Arvernīs* by the *Arvernians* *Sequanisque* and the *Sequanians*: *primo* that at first *circiter millia quindecim* about fifteen thousand *horum* of these *transisse* had crossed *Rhenum* the Rhine: *posteaquam* that when *homines* these men, *feri* wild *ac barbari* and barbarous, *adamassent* had taken a liking to *agros* the lands, *et cultum* and the manners, *et copias* and the abundance *Gallorum* of the Gauls, *plures* a greater number *transductos* had been brought over; *nunc* that now *esse* there is in *Gallia* in Gaul *numerus* the number *centum et viginti millium* of one hundred and twenty thousand: *cum his* that with these *Æduos* the *Æduans* *eorumque clientes* and their clients *contendisse* had contended *armis* in arms *semel* once *atque iterum* and a second time, *pulsos* that having been defeated, *accepisse* they had received *magnam calamitatem* a great calamity, *amisisse* and that they had lost *omnem nobilitatem* all their nobility, *omnem senatum* all their senate, *omnem equitatem* and all their cavalry. *Quibus præliis* b-

which battles *calamitatibusque* and calamities *fractos* having been broken down, *qui* those who, *et* both *sua virtute* by their own valour *et hospitio* and hospitality *atque amicitia* and friendship, *populi Romani* of the Roman people, *plurimum potuissent* had possessed the greatest power *ante* before in *Gallia* in Gaul, *coactos esse* had been compelled *dare* to give *obsides* hostages *Sequanis* to the Sequani, *nobilissimos* the most noble persons *civitatis* of their state, *et* and *obstringere* to bind *civitatem* their state *jurejurando* by an oath, *sese* that they *neque repetituros* would neither reclaim *obsides* the hostages, *neque* nor *imploratu* would ask *auxilium* help a *populo Romano* from the Roman people, *neque recusatu* would not refuse, *quominus* but that *essent* they should be *perpetuo* for ever *sub illorum ditione* under their power *atque imperio* and authority. *Se* that himself *esse* was *unum* the only one *ex omni civitate* out of all the state *Æduorum* of the Æduans *qui* who *non potuerit* could not *adduci* be induced *ut juraret* to swear *aut daret* or to give *liberos suos* his children *obsides* as hostages. *Se* that he *profugisse* had fled *ex civitate* from the state *ob eam rem* on account of that circumstance, *et* and *venisse* had come *Romam* to Rome *ad senatum* to the senate *postulatum* to ask *auxilium* help. *quod* because *solus* he alone *teneretur* was bound *neque* neither *jurejurando* by oath, *neque* nor *obsidibus* by hostages. *Sed* but *accidisse* that it had turned out *pejus* worse *victoribus Sequanis* for the victorious Sequani *quam* than *victis Æduis* for the vanquished Æduans, *propterea* on this account, *quod* because *Ariovistus* Ariovistus, *rex* king *Germanorum* of the Germans, *consedisset* had settled in *eorum finibus* in their territories, *occupavissetque* and had occupied *tertiam partem* the third part *agri Sequani* of the Sequanian territory, *qui* which *esset* was *optimus* the best *totius Galliae* of all Gaul, *et* and *nunc* now *juberet* he ordered *Sequanos* the Sequani *decedere* to depart *de altera tertia parte* from the other third part, *propterea* on this account, *quod*

because, *paucis mensibus ante* a few months before, *viginti quatuor millia* twenty-four thousand *hominum* of men *Harudum* of the Harudes *venissent* had come *ad eum* to him, *quibus* for whom *locus* a place *ac* and *sedes* settlements *pararentur* were to be prepared. *Futurum esse* that it would come to pass *paucis annis* in a few years, *ut* that *omnes* all *pellerentur* would be driven *ex finibus* out of the borders *Galliæ* of Gaul, *atque* and *omnes Germani* all the Germans *transirent* would cross *Rhenum* the Rhine: *neque enim* for neither *esse* is *Gallicum* the Gallic [land] *conferendum* to be compared *cum agro* with the land *Germanorum* of the Germans, *neque* nor *hanc consuetudinem* this mode *victus* of living *comparandum* to be compared *cum illa* with that. *Ariovistum autem* but that Ariovistus, *ut semel vicerit* since he has once conquered *copias* the forces *Gallorum* of the Gauls *prælio* in battle, *quod prælium* which battle *factum sit* was fought *ad Magetobriam* at Magetobria, *imperare* governs *superbe* proudly *et* and *crudeliter* cruelly, *poscere* demands *obsides* as hostages *liberos* the children *nobilissimi cujusque* of each most noble man among them, *et* and *edere* displays *omnia exempla* all examples *cruciatuque* and punishments *in eos* upon them, *si* if *qua res* anything *facta sit* has been done *non* not *ad nutum ejus* at his command. *aut* or *ad voluntatem* according to his will. *Esse* that he is *hominem barbarum* a barbarous man, *iracundum* passionate, *temerarium* rash, *ejus imperia* and that his commands *non posse* cannot *sustineri* be borne *diutius* any longer. *Nisi* [that] unless *si* if *sit* there be *quid auxilii* any aid *in Cæsare* in Cæsar *populoque Romano* and the Roman people, *idem* the same thing *quod* which *Helvetii* the Helvetians *fecerint* have done, *esse faciendum* must be done *omnibus Gallis* by all the Gauls. *ut* that *emigrent* they should emigrate *domo* from their home; *petant* seek *aliud domicilium* another dwelling, *alias* other settlements *remotas* remotea *Germanis* from the Germans, *experianturque* and try *fortunam* their fortune, *quæcun-*

que whatever *accidat* may happen. *Si* [that] if *hæc* these things *enunciata sint* are told *Ariovisto* to *Ariovistus*, *non dubitare* he does not doubt *quin* but that *summat* he will exact *gravissimum supplicium* a most heavy penalty *de omnibus obsidibus* of all the hostages *qui* who *sint* are *apud eum* with him. *Cæsarem* that *Cæsar* *posse* is able *deterre* to prevent *vel* either *auctoritate sua* by his authority *atque* and *exercitus* that of the army *vel* or *recenti victoria* by his recent victory, *vel* or *nomine* by the name *populi Romani* of the Roman people, *ne major multitudo* that no greater number *Germanorum* of Germans *transducatur* be led across *Rhe-
rum* the Rhine, *posseque* and that he is able *defendere* to defend *omnem Galliam* all Gaul *ab injuria* from the injury *Ariovisti* of *Ariovistus*.

XXXII. *Hac oratione* when this speech *habita* had been delivered *ab Divitiaco* by *Divitiacus*, *omnes* all *qui* who *aderant* were present *cæperunt* began *magno fletu* with much weeping *petere* to ask *auxilium* help *a Cæsare* from *Cæsar*. *Cæsar* *Cæsar* *animadvertit* perceived *Sequanos* that the *Sequani* *unos* alone *ex omnibus* of all *facere* did *nihil* none *earum rerum* of those things *quas* which *cæteri* the others *facerent* were doing, *sed* but *tristes* sorrowful, *capite demisso* with head cast down, *intueri* looked on *terram* the ground. *Miratus* wondering *quæ* what *esset* was *causa* the cause *ejus rei* of that circumstance, *quasi* he asked *ex ipsis* of themselves. *Sequani* the *Sequani* *respondere* answered *nihil* nothing, *sed* but *permanere* remained *taciti* silent *in eadem tristitia* in the same sorrow. *Quam* when *quæreret* he asked *ab iis* of them *sæpius* more than once, *neque posset* and was not able *exprimere* to extort from them *ullam vocem* any speech *omnino* at all, *idem Divitiacus* the same *Divitiacus* *Æduus* the *Æduan* *respondit* answered, *Fortunam* that the lot *Sequanorum* of the *Sequani* *esse* was *miseriorem* more wretched *gravioremque* and more severe *præ* in comparison with [that] *ipsorum* of themselves *hoc* in this particular, *quod*

that *soli* they alone *ne in occulto quidem* not even in secret *auderent* dared *queri* to complain, *neque* nor *implorare* to ask *auxilium* assistance *horrerentque* and dreaded *crudelitatem* the cruelty *absentis Ariovisti* of the absent Ariovistus *velut si* as if *adesset* he was present *coram* before their eyes, *propterea* on this account *quod* that *tamen* at all events *facultas* the power *fuga* of flight *daretur* was given *reliquis* to the others; *Sequanis vero* but to the Sequani, *qui* who *recepissent* had received *Ariovistum* Ariovistus *intra fines suos* within their own borders, *quorum oppida omnia* all of whose towns *essent* were in *potestate ejus* in his power, *omnes cruciatus* all kinds of punishments *essent* would be *perferendi* to be borne.

XXXIII. *His rebus cognitis* these things being known, *Cæsar Cæsar confirmavit* confirmed *animos* the minds *Gallorum* of the Gauls *verbis* by his words, *pollicitusque est* and promised *eam rem* that that matter *futuram* should be *curæ* a subject of care *sibi* to him, *se* that he *habere* entertains *magnam spem* great hope *Ariovistum* that Ariovistus, *adductum* induced *et* both *beneficio suo* by his kindness *et* and *auctoritate* his authority, *facturum* would make *finem* an end *injuriis* to his injuries. *Hac oratione habita* when he had delivered this speech, *dimisit* he dismissed *concilium* the meeting. *Et* and *secundum ea* next after those events *multæ res* many things *hortabantur* encouraged *eum* him *quare* for which *putaret* he should think *eam rem* that that matter *cogitandam* ought to be thought of *et* and *suscipiendam* undertaken *sibi* by him; *imprimis* first, *quod* because *videbat* he saw *Æduos* that the Æduans, *appellatos* who had been called *fratres* brethren *consanguineosque* and relations *sæpenumero* numbers of times *a senatu* by the senate, *teneri* were held in *servitute* in servitude *atque* and *in ditione* under the rule *Germanorum* of the Germans, *intelligebatque* and he perceived *eorum obsides* that their hostages *esse* were *apud Ariovistum* with Ariovistus *ac* and *Sequanos* the

Sequani, *quod* which, *in tanto imperio* in the so great empire *populi Romani* of the Roman people, *arbitratur* he thought *esse* to be *turpissimum* most disgraceful *sibi* to himself *et* and *reipublicæ* to the republic. *Germanos autem* but that the Germans *consuescere* should be accustomed *paulatim* by degrees *transire* to cross *Rhenum* the Rhine, *et* and *magnam multitudinem* a great number *eorum* of them *venire* to come in *Galliam* into Gaul *videbat* he saw *periculosum* to be dangerous *populo Romano* to the Roman people: *neque* nor *existimabat* did he think *homines* that men *feros* who were fierce *ac* and *barbaros* barbarous *temperaturos* would put bounds *sibi* to themselves, *quin* but that, *quum* when *occupassent* they had occupied *omnem Galliam* all Gaul *ut* as *Cimbri* the Cimbri *Teutonique* and Teutones *fecissent* had done *ante* before, *exirent* they would go out in *provinciam* into the province, *atque* and *inde* thence *contenderent* force their way in *Italiam* into Italy; *præsertim* especially *quum* since *Rhodanus* the Rhone *divideret* divided *Sequanos* the Sequani *a provincia nostra* from our province: *quibus rebus* which things *putabat* he thought *occurrendum* that he must provide against *quam maturrime* as soon as possible. *Ariovistus autem* but *Ariovistus ipse* himself *sumserat* had assumed *sibi* to himself *tantos spiritus* such great spirits *tantam arrogantiam* and such great pride, *ut* that *videretur* he seemed *non ferendus* impossible to be borne with.

XXXIV. *Quamobrem* wherefore *placuit* it seemed good *ei* to him *ut* that *mitteret* he should send *ad Ariovistum* to Ariovistus *legatos* ambassadors *qui* who *postularent* should demand *ab eo* from him, *uti* that *diceret* he should name *aliquem locum* some place *colloquio* for a conference; *sese* [saying] that he *velle* wished *agere* to treat *cum eo* with him *de republica* concerning the republic *et* and *summīs rebus* the most important interests *utriusque* of each. *Ei legationi* to that embassy *Ariovistus* Ariovistus *respondit* answered: *Si* that if *ipsi esset opus* he had wanted *quid* anything *a Cæsare*

from Cæsar, *sese* he *fuisse venturum* would have come *ad eum* to him; *si* that if *ille* he [Cæsar] *velit* wishes *quid* anything *a se* from himself, *oportere* it behoves *illum* him *venire* to come *ad se* to him [Ariovistus]. *Præterea* moreover, *se* that he *neque audere* neither dares *venire* to come *sine exercitu* without an army *in eas partes* into those parts *Galliæ* of Gaul *quas* which Cæsar Cæsar *possideret* possessed, *neque posse* nor was able *contrahere* to draw together *exercitum* an army *in unum locum* into one place *sine magno commeatu* without great supplies *atque* and *emolumento* exertion; *videri autem* but that it seems *mirum* wonderful *sibi* to him *quid negotii* what business *aut* either *Cæsari esset* Cæsar could have, *aut* or *populo Romano* the Roman people, *in sua Gallia* in his [part of] Gaul, *quam* which *vicisset* he had conquered *bello* in war.

XXXV. *His responsis* these answers *relatis* having been brought back *ad Cæsarem* to Cæsar, Cæsar Cæsar *iterum mittit* again sends *legatos* ambassadors *ad eum* to him *cum his mandatis* with these instructions: *Quoniam* [that] since *affectus* [though] treated *tanto beneficio* by such great kindness *suo* of his own [Cæsar's] *populique Romani* and of the Roman people, *quum* seeing that *appellatus esset* he had been called *rex* king *atque amicus* and friend *a senatu* by the senate *in suo consulatu* in his [Cæsar's] consulship, *referre* he paid back *hanc gratiam* this gratitude *sibi* to himself *populoque Romano* and to the Roman people, *ut* that *gravaretur* he grudged *venire* to come *in colloquium* to a conference *invitatus* when invited, *neque putaret* and did not think *dicendum sibi* that he ought to speak *et* and *cognoscendum* inquire *de re communi* concerning the common good; *hæc* that these *esse* are *quæ* the things which *postularet* he demanded *ab eo* from him; *primum* first *ne transduceret* that he would not transport *amplius* any longer *quam multitudinem* any number *hominum* of men *trans Rhenum* beyond the Rhine *in Galliam* into Gaul; *deinde* and then *redderet* that he would restore *obsides* the

hostages *quos* which *haberet* he had *ab Æduis* from the Ædui; *permitteretque* and would give permission *Sequanis* to the Sequanians, *ut* that *liceret illis* it might be allowed them *voluntate ejus* with his good will *reddere* to give up *quos* those which *illi* they *haberent* had; *neve lacesseret* and that he would not provoke *Æduos* the Æduans, *neve inferret* nor wage *bellum* war *his* against them *sociisque eorum* and their allies. *Si* if *ita fecisset* he should so do *id* that, *futuram* that there would be *perpetuam gratiam* perpetual favour *atque amicitiam* and friendship *cum eo* with him [Ariovistus] *sibi* for himself [Cæsar] *populoque Romano* and the Roman people: *si* if *non impetraret* he could not obtain this, *quoniam* since *Marco Messala* when *Marcus Messala* *Marco Pisone* [and] *Marcus Piso* *consulibus* were consuls *senatus* the senate *censuisset* had passed a vote, *uti* that *quicumque* whosoever *obtineret* should hold *Galliam provinciam* the province of Gaul, (*quod* [a thing] which *posset* he might be able *facere* to do *commodo* to the advantage *reipublicæ* of the republic.) *defenderet* should defend *Æduos* the Æduans *cæterosque amicos* and the other friends *populi Romani* of the Roman people, *non neglecturum* he [Cæsar] would not neglect *injurias* the injuries *Æduorum* of the Æduans.

XXXVI. *Ariovistus* *Ariovistus respondit* answered *ad hæc* to these things: *Esse* that it was *jus* the right *belli* of war, *ut* that *qui* those who *vicissent* had conquered, *imperarent* should give orders *quemadmodum* as *vellent* they pleased *iis* to those *quos* whom *vicissent* they had conquered: *item* also *populum Romanum* that the Roman people *consuesse* had been used *imperare* to give orders *victis* to conquered nations, *non* not *ad præscriptum* at the direction *alterius* of another party, *sed* but *ad suum arbitrium* at their own discretion. *Si* if *ipse* himself *non præscriberet* did not prescribe *populo Romano* to the Roman people *quemadmodum* in what manner *uteretur* they should use *suo jure* their right, *sese* that himself *non oportere* ought not *impediri* to be

impeded in *suo jure* in his right a *populo Romano* by the Roman people. *Æduos* that the *Æduans*, *quoniam* since *tentassent* they had tried *fortunam* the fortune *belli* of war, *et* and *essent congressi* had engaged *armis* in arms *et* and *superati* been overcome, *factos esse* had become *stipendiarios* tributary *sibi* to him. *Cæsarem* that *Cæsar facere* did *magnam injuriam* a great wrong, *qui* who *faceret* made *vectigalia* the revenues *deteriora* less valuable *sibi* for him *adventu suo* by his coming. *Se* that he *non esse redditurum* would not give up *obsides* the hostages *Æduis* to the *Æduans*; *neque* nor *illaturum* would bring *bellum* war *iis* on them *neque* nor *sociis eorum* their allies *injuria* unjustly, *si* if *manerent* they abided in *eo* in that *quod* which *convenisset* had been agreed on, *penderentque* and paid *quotannis* yearly *stipendium* the tribute; *si* if *non fecissent* they should not do *id* that, *fraternum nomen* the brotherly appellation *populi Romani* of the Roman people *longe a futurum* would be far from helping *iis* them. *Quod* [that] whereas *Cæsar* *Cæsar denunciaret* denounced *sibi* to him, *se* that he *non neglecturum* would not neglect *injuria* the injuries *Æduorum* of the *Æduans*, *neminem* no one *contendisse* had contended *secum* with him *sine sua perniciæ* without destruction to himself. *Quum* whenever he [*Cæsar*] *vellet* chose, *congrederetur* he might engage; *intellecturum* that he would understand *quid* what *invicti Germani* the invincible Germans *possent* could [do] *virtute* by valour, *exercitatissimi* most experienced in arms in arms, *qui* who *non subiissent* had not gone under *tectum* a roof *inter annos quatuordecim* within fourteen years.

XXXVII. *Hæc mandata* these instructions *referabantur* were brought back *Cæsari* to *Cæsar*, *et* and *legati* ambassadors *veniebant* came *ab Æduis* from the *Ædui* *et* and *a Treviris* from the *Treviri* *eodem tempore* at the same time: *Ædui* the *Ædui* *questum* to complain, *quod* that *Harudes* the *Harudes*, *qui* who *nuper* lately *transportati essent* had been led over in *Galliam* into

Gaul, *popularentur* were devastating *fines eorum* their territories; *sese* that they *potuisse* had been able *redimere* to purchase *pacem* the peace *Ariovisti* of Ariovistus *ne obsidibus quidem* not even by giving hostages. *Treviri autem* but the Treviri [complain] *centum pagos* that an hundred tribes *Suevorum* of Suevians *consedissee* had encamped *ad ripas* on the banks *Rheni* of the Rhine, *qui* who *conarentur* were endeavouring *transire* to cross *Rhenum* the Rhine, *Nasua* that *Nasua* and *Cimberium* *Cimber*, *fratres* brothers, *præesse iis* were at their head. *Quibus rebus* by which events *Cæsar* *Cæsar* *vehementer commotus* being violently disturbed, *existimavit* thought *maturandum sibi* that he must make haste, *ne* lest, *si* if *nova manus* a new band *Suevorum* of Suevians *conjunxisset* should unite *sese* themselves *cum veteribus copiis* with the former forces *Ariovisti* of Ariovistus, *posset resisti* they might be resisted *minus facile* less easily. *Itaque* therefore, *re frumentaria* supplies of provisions *comparata* having been prepared, *quam celerrime potuit* as quickly as he was able, *contendit* he made his way *ad Ariovistum* to Ariovistus *magnis itineribus* by long marches.

XXXVIII. *Quum* when *processisset* he had advanced *viam* to a distance *tridui* of three days, *nunciatum est* it was told *ei* to him, *Ariovistum* that Ariovistus *cum omnibus suis copiis* with all his forces *contendere* was marching *ad occupandum Vesontionem* to seize Vesontio, *quod* which *est* is *oppidum maximum* the greatest town *Sequanorum* of the Sequani, *processisseque* and had advanced *viam* a journey *tridui* of three days *a suis finibus* from his territories. *Cæsar* *Cæsar* *existimabat* thought *præcavendum sibi* that he should take precaution *magno opere* by the greatest exertion, *ne id accideret* that that might not happen. *Namque* for *erat* there was *in eo oppido* in that town *summa facultas* a great supply *omnium rerum* of all things, *quæ* which *erant* were *usui* useful *ad bellum* for war; *idque* and it *sic muniebatur* was so protected *natura* by the nature *loci* of

the place, *ut* that *daret* it furnished *magnam facultatem* great means *ad ducendum bellum* for protracting the war, *propterea* on this account *quod* that *flumen Dubis* the river Dubis, *circumductum* drawn round it *ut* as if *circino* by a pair of compasses, *cingit* surrounds *pæne* almost *totum oppidum* the whole town; *mons* a mountain *magna altitudine* by its great height *continet* shuts in *reliquum spatium* the remaining space, *quod* which *est* is *non amplius* not more *pedum sexcentorum* than of six hundred feet, *qua* where *flumen* the river *intermittit* fails, *ita* in such a way *ut* that *ripæ* the banks *fluminis* of the river *contingant* touch *radices* the roots *montis* of the mountain *ex utraque parte* on both sides. *Murus* a wall *circumdatus* built round *efficit* renders *hunc* this [mountain] *arcem* a citadel *et* and *conjungit* joins it *cum oppido* with the town. *Huc* hither *Cæsar* *Cæsar* *contendit* makes his way *magnis itineribus* by long marches *nocturnis* by night *diurnisque* and by day; *occupatoque oppido* and having occupied the town, *collocat* places *ibi* there *præsidium* a garrison.

XXXIX. *Dum* whilst *moratur* he stops *paucos dies* a few days *ad Vesontionem* at Vesontio, *causa* for the purpose *rei frumentariæ* of procuring corn *commeatusque* and supplies, *ex percunctatione* from the inquiries *nostorum* of our men, *vocibusque* and the expressions *Gallorum* of the Gauls, *ac* and *mercatorum* of merchants *qui* who *prædicabant* asserted *Germanos* that the Germans *esse* were [men] *ingenti magnitudine* of vast size *corporum* of bodies, *incredibili virtute* of incredible valour *atque* and *exercitatione* experience *in armis* in arms, *sese* that themselves *congressos* having engaged *cum iis* with them *sæpenumero* numbers of times, *potuisse* had been able *ferre* to bear *ne vultum quidem* not even their look *atque* and *aciem* the glance *oculorum* of their eyes; *tantus timor* such great fear *subito* on a sudden *occupavit* seized *omnem exercitum* the whole army, *ut* that *perturbaret* it disturbed *mentes* the minds *animosque* and spirits *omnium* of all *non mediocriter* in

no slight degree. *Hic* this *ortus est* arose *primum* first *a tribunis* from the tribunes *militum* of the soldiers, *præfectis* the præfects *reliquisque* and the rest, *qui* who *sequeuti* having followed *Cæsarem* Cæsar *ex urbe* from the city *causa* for the sake *amicitiæ* of friendship, *miserabantur* felt pity for *magnum periculum* the great danger, *quod* because *non habebant* they had not *magnum usum* great experience in *re militari* in military affairs. *Quorum* of whom *alius* each different person, *alia causa* *illata* bringing forward a different reason, *quam* which *dicerent* they said *esse* was *necessariam* necessary *sibi* for them *ad profiscendum* to depart, *petebant* they asked, *ut* that *liceret* it might be allowed them *discedere* to depart *eius voluntate* with his consent; *nonnulli* some of them, *adducti* induced *pudore* by shame, *ut* that *vitarent* they might avoid *suspicionem* the suspicion *timoris* of fear, *remanebant* remained. *Hi* these *poterant* were able *neque* neither *fingere vultum* to assume a [calm] look, *neque* nor *interdum* sometimes *tenerè* to restrain *lacrimas* their tears: *abditæ* hidden in *tabernaculis* in their tents, *aut quærebantur* they either complained of *suum fatum* their lot, *aut* or *miserabantur* lamented *commune periculum* the common danger *cum familiaribus suis* with their familiar [friends]. *Testamenta* wills *obsignabantur* were sealed *vulgo* generally *totis castris* through the whole camp. *Vocibus* by the words *ac* and *timore* alarm *horum* of these, *paulatim* gradually *etiam hi* those also *qui* who *habebant* had *magnum usum* great experience in *castris* in a camp, *milites* soldiers, *centuriones* centurions, *quique* and those who *præerant* were over *equitatu* the cavalry *perturbabantur* were disturbed. *Qui* those who *volebant* wished *se* themselves *existimari* to be thought *minus timidos* less afraid *ex his* out of these, *dicebant* said *se* that they *non vereri* feared not *hostem* the enemy, *sed* but *angustias* the passes *itineris* of the road, *et* and *magnitudinem* the greatness *silvarum* of the woods, *quæ* which *intercederent* intervened *inter ipsos* between themselves *atque* and *Ario-*

vistum Ariovistus, *aut* or *timere* were afraid about *rem frumentarium* the supply of provisions, *ut* [to the intent] that *posset* it might *supportari* be maintained *satis commode* with sufficient facility. *Nonnulli* some *etiam* also *renunciabant* reported *Cæsari* to Cæsar *quum* when *jussisset* he had commanded *castra* the camp *moveri* to be removed *ac* and *signa* the standards *ferri* to be borne [onward], *milites* that the soldiers *non fore* would not be *audientes* obedient *dicto* to the word of command, *neque* nor *latueros* bear *signa* the standards *propter timorem* for fear.

XL. *Quum* when *animadvertisset* he had perceived *hæc* these things, *convocato concilio* having called a council, *adhibitisque centurionibus* and having introduced the centurions *omnium ordinum* of all ranks *ad id consilium* to that counsel, *incusavit* he accused them *vehementer* vehemently; *primum* first, *quod* because *putarent* they thought *sibi quærendum* that they ought to inquire *aut* or *cogitandum* deliberate, *aut* either *in quam partem* to what quarter *aut* or *quo consilio* with what intention *ducerentur* they were led. *Ariovistum* that Ariovistus, *se consule* when himself was consul, *appetisse* had desired *amicitiam* the friendship *populi Romani* of the Roman people *cupidissime* most eagerly. *Cur* why *quisquam* should any one *judicaret* judge *hunc* that he *discessurum* would depart *tam temere* so rashly *ab officio* from his duty? *Sibi quidem persuaderi* that himself indeed was convinced *suis postulatis* that when his own [Cæsar's] demands *cognitis* were known, *atque* and *æquitate* the fairness *conditionum* of his terms *perspecta* was clearly seen, *eum* he *repudiaturum* would repudiate *neque suam gratiam* neither his own [Cæsar's] favour *neque* nor [that] *populi Romani* of the Roman people. *Quod si* but if, *impulsus* urged *furore* by fury *atque amentia* and madness, *intulisset bellum* he should make war, *quid* what *tandem* in short *vererentur* did they fear? *aut* or *cur* why *desperarent* did they despair *de sua virtute* of their own valour *aut* or *de ipsius dili-*

gentia of his own diligence ? *Periculum* that a trial *ejus hostis* of that enemy *factum* had been made, *memoria* in the recollection *patrum nostrorum* of our fathers, *quum* when, *Cimbris* the Cimbri *et Teutonis* and the Teutoni *pulsis* having been repulsed a *Caiō Mario* by Caius Marius, *exercitus* the army *videbatur* seemed *meritus* to have deserved *non minorem laudem* no less praise *quam* than *ipse imperator* the commander himself. *Factum* that [a trial] had been made *etiam* also *nuper* lately in *Italia* in Italy, *servili tumultu* in the insurrection of the slaves, *quos tamen* whom, however, *usus* the experience *ac* and *disciplina* discipline *quam* which *accepissent* they had received a *nobis* from us *sublevarent* assisted *aliquid* in some degree. *Ex quo* from which *posset* it might *judicari* be judged *quantum boni* what a great advantage *constantia* firmness *haberet* had in *se* in it; *propterea* on this account *quod* because *postea* afterwards *vicissent* they had conquered *hos* those men *armatos* armed *ac* and *victores* victorious *quos* whom *aliquandiu* for some time *timuissent* they had feared *sine causa* without cause *inermes* when unarmed. *Denique* lastly, *host* that these *esse* were *eisdem* the same men *quibuscum* with whom *Helvetii* the Helvetians *congressi* having engaged *sæpe numero* numbers of times, *plerumque* generally *superarint* had overcome them *non solum* not only in *suis finibus* in their own territories, *sed etiam* but also in *illorum* in theirs [the Germans], *qui* who [the Helvetians] *tamen* yet *non potuerint* have not been able *esse* to be *pares* equal *nostro exercitu* to our army. *Si* if *adversum prælium* an adverse battle *et fuga* and the flight *Gallorum* of the Gauls *commoveret* disturbed *quos* any men, *hos* that these, *si* if *quererent* they inquired, *posse* might *reperire* find, *Gallis* [that] when the Gauls *defatigatis* had been worn out *diuturnitate* by the length *belli* of the war, *Ariovistum* Ariovistus, *quum* when *tenuisset* he had kept *se* himself *multos menses* many months *castris* in his camp *ac* and *paludibus* in the marshes, *neque*

fecisset and had not furnished *potestatem* any opportunity *sui* of [fighting] him, *adortum* having attacked them *subito* suddenly, *desperantes jam* when already despairing *de pugna* of fighting *et* and *dispersos* dispersed, *vicisse* had conquered them *magis* more *ratione* by method *et* and *consilio* by prudence *quam* than *virtute* by valour. *Cui rationi* that to whatever method *locus* an opportunity *fuisset* might have been given *contra homines* against men *barbaros* who were barbarians *atque* and *imperitos* inexperienced, *ne ipsum quidem* not even himself [Ariovistus] *sperare* hopes *hac* that by this [same] *nostros exercitus* our armies *posse* can *capi* be taken. *Qui* [that those] who *conferrent* threw *suum timorem* their own fear in *simulationem* upon a pretence *rei frumentariæ* of the supply of provisions *angustiasque* and the narrowness *itinerum* of the roads, *facere* acted *arroganter* with arrogance; *quum* since *viderentur* they seemed *aut* either *desperare* to despair *de officio* of the duty *imperatoris* of their commander *aut* or *præscribere ei* to prescribe to him [what he should do]. *Hæc* that these things *esse* were *cურæ sibi* his own care: *Sequanos* that the Sequani, *Leucos* the Leuci, *Lingonas* [and] the Lingones *subministrare* supplied *frumentum* corn, *frumenta* and that the crops *jam* already *esse* were *matura* ripe in *agris* in the fields: *ipsos* that themselves *judicatu* would judge *de itinere* about their march *brevi tempore* in a short time. *Quod* [that] whereas *milites* the soldiers *dicantur* are said *non fore* not to be about to be *audientes* obedient *dicto* to the word [of command], *neque* nor *laturi* ready to bear *signa* the standards, *se* himself [Cæsar] *nihil commoveri* was in no wise disturbed *ea re* by that matter: *scire enim* for that he knew *quibuscumque* that to whatsoever generals *exercitus* an army *non fuerit* has not been *audiens* obedient *dicto* to their command, *aut* either *fortunam* fortune *defuisse* had failed them, *re male gesta* by want of success, *aut* or *avaritiam* that their covetousness *esse convictam* had been convicted, *abiquo faci-*

nore *comperto* by some crime discovered. *Suam innocentiam* that his own innocence *esse perspectam* has been seen clearly *perpetua vita* through all his life, *felicitatem* [and] good fortune *bello* in the war *Helvetiorum* of the Helvetians. *Itaque* therefore *se* that he *repræsentaturum* would do presently *quod* what *collaturus* *esset* he would have put off *in longiorem diem* to a more distant day, *et* and *moturum* would remove *castra* the camp *proxima nocte* the next night *de quarta vigilia* in the fourth watch, *ut* that *posset* he might be able *quam primum* as soon as possible *intelligere* to understand *utrum* whether *pudor* honour *atque* and *officium* duty *an* or *timor* fear *valeret* was of influence [over them]. *Quod si* but if *præterea* moreover *nemo* no one *sequatur* follows, *tamen* yet *se* himself *iturum* would go *eum decima legione* with the tenth legion *sola* alone, *de qua* about which *non dubitaret* he had no doubts, *eamque* and that *futuram* should be *sibi* to him *prætoriam cohortem* his prætorian cohort. *Cæsar* *Cæsar* *et* both *indulserat* had shown indulgence *huic legioni* to this legion *præcipue* especially, *et* and *confidebat* trusted to it *maxime* most *propter virtutem* on account of its valour.

XLI. *Hac oratione habita* when this oration was delivered, *mentes* the minds *omnium* of all *conversæ sunt* were changed *mirum in modum* to a wonderful degree, *summaque alacritas* and the greatest alacrity *et* and *cupiditas* desire *belli gerendi* of carrying on the war *innata est* grew up ; *princepsque* and first *decima legio* the tenth legion *egit* gave *gratias* thanks *ei* to him *per tribunos* through the tribunes *militum* of the soldiers, *quod* because *fecisset* he had formed *optimum iudicium* the best judgment *de se* of it ; *confirmavitque* and assured him *se* that it *esse* was *paratissimum* most ready *ad bellum gerendum* to carry on the war. *Deinde* then *reliquæ legiones* the other legions *egerunt* took measures *per tribunos* through the tribunes *militum* of the soldiers *et* and *centuriones* the centurions *primorum ordinum* of the first ranks *uti* that *satisfacerent* they

might give satisfaction *Cæsari* to Cæsar: *se* that they *neque* neither *unquam* ever *dubitasse* had hesitated, *neque* nor *timuisse* been afraid, *neque* nor *existimavisse* thought *esse* that it was *sum judicium* their province to judge *de summa* about the conduct *belli* of the war, *sed* but *imperatoris* the commander's. *Eorum satisfactione* their satisfaction *accepta* having been received, *et* and *itinere* their march *exquisito* having been reconnoitred *per Divitiacum* through Divitiacus, *quod* because *habebat* he had *maximam fidem* the greatest trust *ei* in him *ex aliis* out of the others, *profectus est* he set out *de quarta vigilia* in the third watch *ut* as *dixerat* he had said, *ut* that *duceret* he might lead *exercitum* his army *locis apertis* in open places *circuitu* by a circuit *amplius* more than *quinquaginta millium* of fifty miles. *Septimo die* on the seventh day, *quum* when *non intermitteret* de did not relax *iter* his journey, *factus est* he was made *certior* further acquainted *ab exploratoribus* by scouts, *copias* that the forces *Ariovisti* of Ariovistus *abesse* were distant *a nostris* from ours *quatuor et viginti millibus* twenty-four thousand *passuum* of paces.

XLII. *Ariovistus* Ariovistus, *cognito adventu* when he heard of the arrival *Cæsaris* of Cæsar, *mittit* sends *legatos* ambassadors *ad eum* to him: [saying] *id* that the thing *quod* which *postulasset* he had demanded *antea* before *de colloquio* about a conference, *licere* was allowed *feri* to be done *per se* as far as he [*Ariovistus*] was concerned, *quando* since *accessisset* he had approached *propius* nearer; *seque* and that he *existimare* thought *posse* he could *facere* do *id* that *sine periculo* without danger. *Cæsar* Cæsar *non respuit* did not reject *conditionem* the condition; *arbitrabaturque* and thought *eum* that he *jam* already *reverti* was returning *ad sanitatem* to his senses, *quum* since *polliceretur* he promised *ultro* of his own accord *id* that *quod* which *denegasset* he had refused *antea* before *petenti* to him asking it: *veniebatque* and he came in *magnam spem* into great hope, *pro tantis beneficiis* [that] in return

for such great benefits *suis* from himself *populique Romani* and of the Roman people *in eum* towards him, *cognitis suis postulatis* when his demands were known *fore* it would result, *uti* that *desisteret* he would desist *pertinacia* from his pertinacity. *Dies* a day *dictus est* was named *colloquio* for the conference, *quintus* the fifth *ex eo die* from that day. *Interim* meanwhile, *quum* when *legati* ambassadors *sæpe mitterentur* were often sent *ultro citroque* to and fro *inter eos* between them, *Ariovistus* Ariovistus *postulavit* demanded *ne Cæsar adduceret* that Cæsar should not bring *quem petitem* any foot-soldier *ad colloquium* to the conference: *se* that he *vereri* was afraid *ne* lest *circumveniretur* he should be circumvented *ab eo* by him *per insidias* by an ambuscade: *uterque* that each *veniret* should come *cum equitatu* with cavalry: *se* that he *non venturum* will not come *alia ratione* on any other terms. *Cæsar* Cæsar, *quod* because *neque volebat* he neither wished *colloquium* the conference *tolli* to be withdrawn, *interposita causa* for the cause assigned, *neque audebat* nor dared *committere* to trust *suam salutem* his safety *equitatui* to the cavalry *Gallorum* of the Gauls, *statuit* determined *esse* that it was *commodissimum* most convenient, *detractis omnibus equis* having taken all the horses *Gallis equitibus* from the Gallic cavalry, *imponere* to place upon them *legionarios milites* the legionary soldiers *decimæ legionis* of the tenth legion, *cui* in which *confidebat* he trusted *quam maxime* as much as possible, *eo* to this end, *ut* that *haberet* he might have *præsidium* a guard *quam amicissimum* as friendly as possible, *si* if *quid opus facto esset* there should be need of doing anything. *Quod quum fieret* which being done, *quidam* some one *ex militibus* of the soldiers *decimæ legionis* of the tenth legion *dixit* said *non irridicule* not without humour, *Cæsarem* that Cæsar *facere* did *ei* for it *plus quam* than *pollicitus esset* he had promised; *pollicitum* [that] having promised *se* that he *habiturum* would have *decimam legionem* the tenth legion *in loco*

in the place *cohortis pratoriae* of a prætorian cohort, *nunc* now *rescribere* he reterred them back *ad equum* to the cavalry.

XLIII. *Erat* there was *magna planities* a great plain, *et* and *in ea* in it *tumulus terrenus* a mound of earth *satis grandis* of considerable size. *Hic locus* this place *aberat* was distant *fere* almost *æquo spatio* by an equal space *ab utrisque castris* from both camps. *Eo* thither, *ut* as *dictum erat* had been named, *venerunt* they came *ad colloquium* to the conference. *Cæsar* Cæsar *constituit* placed *legionem* the legion *quam* which *deveixerut* he had brought *equis* on horseback *passibus ducentis* two hundred paces *ab eo tumulo* from that mound: *item* also *equites* the horsemen *Ariovisti* of Ariovistus *constituerent* took their post *pari intervallo* at a similar distance. *Ariovistus* Ariovistus *postulavit* demanded *ut* that *colloquerentur* they should converse *ex equis* from their horses, *et* and *ut* that *præturse* besides themselves *adducerent* they should bring *denos* ten [each] *ad colloquium* to the conference. *Ubi* when *ventum est* they had come *eo* thither, *Cæsar* Cæsar *initio* in the beginning *orationis* of his speech *commemoravit* mentioned *sua beneficia* his own good deeds *senatusque* and those of the senate *in eum* towards him; *quod* that *appelatus* *esset* he had been called *rex* king *a senatu* by the senate, *quod* that [he had been called] *amicus* a friend, *quod* that *munera amplissima* most ample gifts *missa* had been sent, *quam rem* which thing *docebat* he told him *et* both *contigisse* had happened *paucis* to few, *et* and *consuesse* had been accustomed *tribui* to be given *pro magnis officiis* in return for great services *hominum* of men: *illum* that he, *quum* since *haberet* he had *neque* neither *aditum* access *neque* nor *justam causam* a just cause *postulandi* of asking for them, *beneficio* by the kindness *ac* and *liberalitate* liberality *sua* of himself *ac* and *senatus* of the senate, *consequutum* had obtained *ea præmia* those rewards. *Docebat etiam* he told him also, *quam veteres* what old *quamque justæ causæ* and

what just causes *necessitudinis* of alliance *intercederent* intervened *ipsis* for themselves *cum Æduis* with the Ædui; *quæ consulta* what decrees *senatus* of the senate, *quoties* how often, *quamque honorifica* and how honourable *facta essent* had been made *in eos* towards them, *ut* how Ædui the Ædui *tenuissent* had held *principatum* the lead *totius Galliæ* of all Gaul *omni tempore* at all time *etiam* even *prius quam* before that *appetissent* they had desired *nostram amicitiam* our friendship. *Hanc* that such *esse* was *consuetudinem* the custom *populi Romani* of the Roman people, *ut* that *relit* it wished *socios* their allies *atque* and *amicos* friends *non modo* not only *deperdere* to lose *nihil* nothing *sui* of their own, *sed* but *esse* to be *auctiores* increased *gratia* in favour, *dignitate* in dignity, *honore* in honour. *Quis vero* but who *posset* could *pati* suffer *id* that the thing, *quod* which *attulissent* they had contributed *ad amicitiam* to the friendship *populi Romani* of the Roman people. *eripi* should be taken away *iis* from them? *Deinde* then *postulavit* he demanded *eadem* the same things, *quæ* which *dederat* he had given *in mandatis* among his instructions *legat. s* to his ambassadors, *ne inferret* that he should not carry on *bellum* war *aut* either *Æduis* against the Ædui *aut* or *eorum sociis* their allies; *redderet* that he should give up *obsides* the hostages: *si* [that] if *posset* he was able *remittere* to send back *nullam partem* no part *Germanorum* of the Germans *domum* home, at however *ne pateretur* that he should not suffer *quos* any *amplius* further *transire* to cross *Rhenum* the Rhine.

XLIV. *Ariovistus* Ariovistus *respondit* answered *pauca* few words *ad postulata* to the demands *Cæsaris* of Cæsar; *prædicavit* he boasted *multa* much *de suis virtutibus* of his own virtues; *sese* that he *transisse* had crossed *Rhenum* the Rhine *non* not *sua sponte* of his own accord, *sed* but *rogatum* asked *et* and *arcessitum* sent for *a Gallis* by the Gauls; *reliquisse* that he had left *domum* his home *propinquosque* and his relations

non not *sine magna spe* without great hope *magnisque præmiis* and great rewards; *habere* that he had *sedes* settlements in *Gallia* in Gaul *concessas* allowed *ab ipsis* by [the Gauls] themselves; *obsides* that hostages *datos* had been given *voluntate* with the consent *ipsorum* of themselves; *capere* that he received *jure* by the right *belli* of war *stipendium* the tribute *quod* which *victores* victors *consueverint* have been accustomed *imponere* to impose *victis* on the vanquished; *non* that it was not *sese* himself *intulisse* [who] had made *bellum* war *Gallis* on the Gauls, *sed* but *Gallos* the Gauls *sibi* on him; *omnes civitates* that all the states *Galliæ* of Gaul *venisse* had come *ad se oppugnandum* to attack him, *ac* and *habuisse* had occupied *castra* their camp *contra se* over against him; *eas omnes copias* that all those forces *fusas esse* had been routed *ac* and *superatas* overcome *a se* by him *uno prælio* in one battle. *Si* [that] if *velint* they wish *experiri* to try *iterum* again, *sese* himself *paratum* is prepared *iterum* again *decertare* to fight it out; *si* [but] *fi velint* they wish *uti* to enjoy *pace* peace, *esse* it is *iniquum* unjust *recusare* to make a refusal *de stipendio* about tribute, *quod* which *pependerint* they had paid *sua voluntate* with their own good-will *ad id tempus* up to that time. *Amicitiam* that the friendship *populi Romani* of the Roman people *oportere* ought *esse* to be *sibi* to him *ornamento* an ornament *et* and *præsidio* a protection, *non* not *detrimeto* a detriment; *sequæ* and that he *petisse* had sought *id* it *ea spe* with that hope. *Si* [that] if *stipendium* the tribute *remittatur* is remitted *per populum Romanum* through the Roman people, *et* and *dediticii* those who have surrendered *subtrahantur* are taken away from him *sese* himself *recusaturum* will refuse *amicitiam* the friendship *populi Romani* of the Roman people *non minus libenter* no less readily *quam* than *appetierit* he had coveted it. *Quod* that whereas *transducatur* he is leading over *multitudinem* a multitude *Germanorum* of Germans in *Galliam* into Gaul, *se* he *facere* does *id* that *causa* for the sake *nummiendi sui* of protecting him-

self, *non not impugnandæ Galliæ* of attacking Gaul, *esse* that it was *testimonium* a proof *ejus rei* of that assertion, *quod* that *non venerit* he had not come *nisi* except *rogatus* when asked, *et* and *quod* that *non intulerit* he had not brought on *bellum* the war, *sed* but *defenderit* defended [himself]. *Se* that he *venisse* had come in *Galliam* into Gaul *priusquam* before that *populum Romanum* the Roman people [had come]. *Exercitum* that the army *populi Romani* of the Roman people *numquam* never *ante hoc tempus* before this time *egressum* had overstepped *fines* the borders *Galliæ provincie* of the province of Gaul. *Quid* what *vellet* did they wish *sibi* for themselves? *Cur* why *veniret* did they come in *suas possessiones* into his possessions? *hanc Galliæ* that this [part of] Gaul *esse* *issuam provinciam* his province, *sicut* as *illam* that *nostram* is ours. *Ut* [that] as *non oporteret* it would not be right *concedi* for submission to be made *ipsi* to himself, *si* if *faceret* he should make *impetum* an invasion in *nostros fines* into our territories, *sic* so *item* also *nos* we *esse* were *iniquos* unjust, *qui* who *interpellaremus* interfered with *se* him in *suo jure* in his rights. *Quod* [that] whereas *diceret* he [Cæsar] said *Æduos* that the *Æduans* *appellatos* had been called *fratres* brothers *a senatu* by the senate, *se* he *non esse* was not *tam barbarum* so barbarous *neque* nor *tam imperitum* so inexperienced *rerum* in matters of business *ut non sciret* as not to know *neque* *Æduos* that neither the *Æduans* *tulisse* had rendered *auxilium* aid *Romanis* to the Romans, *bello proximo* in the last war *Allobrogum* of the Allobroges, *neque* nor *ipsos* themselves *usos esse* had received *auxilio* the assistance *populi Romani* of the Roman people in *his contentione* in those contests *quas* which *Ædui* the *Æduans* *habuissent* had had *secum* with himself *et* and *cum Sequanis* with the Sequani. *Se* that he *debere* was bound *susplicari* to suspect *Cæsarem* that Cæsar, *quod nabeat* in having *exercitum* an army in *Gallia* in Gaul, *simulata amicitia* when he pretended friendship, *habere*

had it *causa* for the sake *sui opprimendi* of crushing him. *Qui* who *nisi* unless *decedat* he departs, *atque* and *deducat* leads away *exercitum* his army *ex his regionibus* out of these regions, *sese* himself [*Ariovistus*] *habiturum* will hold *illum* him *non* not *pro amico* for a friend, *sed* but *pro hoste* as a foe; *quod si* but that if *interfercerit* he shall slay *eum* him [*Cæsar*] *sese* he *facturum esse* will do *gratum* a thing grateful *nobilibus* to the nobles *principibusque* and chief men *populi Romani* of the Roman people: *se* that he *habere* has *id* that *compertum* ascertained *ab ipsis* from themselves *pereorum nuncios* through their messengers, *quorum omnium* of all of whom *posset* he might be able *redimere* to purchase *gratiam* the favour *atque* and *amicitiam* the friendship *eius morte* by his death. *Quod si* but [that] if *decessisset* he should depart, *et* and *tradidisset* deliver *sibi* to him *liberam possessionem* the free possession *Galliæ* of Gaul, *se* he *remuneraturum* would recompense *illum* him *magno præmio* with a great reward, *et* and *confecturum* would bring to an end *sine ulla labore* without any toil *et periculo* or danger *eius* of his *quæcunque bella* whatever wars *vellet* he wished *geri* to be carried on.

XLV. *Multa* many things *dicta sunt* were said *ab Cæsare* by *Cæsar* *in eam sententiam* to this effect, *quare* why *non posset* he could not *desistere* desist *negotio* from his purpose, *et* and *neque* that neither *suam* his own custom *neque* nor *populi Romani* that of the Roman people *pati* suffered *uti* that *desereret* he should abandon *socios* allies *meritos* that had deserved *optime* very well [of them]; *neque se judicare* and that he does not consider *Galliam* that Gaul *esse* is *Ariovisti* the property of *Ariovistus* *potius* rather *quam* than *populi Romani* of the Roman people. *Arvernorum* that the *Arvernians* *et* and *Rutenos* the *Ruteni* *superatos esse* had been overcome *bello* in war *ab Quinto Fabio Maximo* by *Quintus Fabius Maximus*, *quibus* to which [nations] *populus Romanus* the Roman people *ignovisset* had granted a pardon, *neque redegisset* and had not reduced

them *in provinciam* into [the form of] a province, *neque imposuisset* nor imposed on them *stipendium* a tribute. *Quod si* but [that] if *oporteret* it were right *antiquissimum quodque tempus* that the most distant period *spectari* should be regarded, *imperium* the authority *populi Romani* of the Roman people in *Gallia* in Gaul *esse* was *justissimum* most just: *si* [that] if *judicium* the judgment *senatus* of the senate *oportere* ought *observari* to be regarded, *Galliam* Gaul *debere* ought *esse* to be *liberam* free, *quam* which, *victam* conquered *bello* in war, *voluisset* it had willed *uti* to use *suis legibus* its own laws.

XLVI. *Dum* whilst *hæc* these things *geruntur* are done in *colloquio* in the conference, *nunciatum est* it was told *Cæsari* to Cæsar *equites* that the horsemen *Ariovisti* of Ariovistus *accedere* were approaching *propius* nearer *tumulum* to the mound, *et* and *adequitare* were galloping up *ad nostros* to our men, *conjicere* and were hurling *lapides* stones *telaque* and weapons in *nostros* on our men. *Cæsar* Cæsar *fecit* made *finem* an end *loquendi* of speaking; *recepitque* and withdrew *se* himself *ad suos* to his men; *imperavitque* and gave commands *suis* to his men *ne rejicerent* not to cast back *quod telum* any weapon *omnino* at all in *hostes* against the enemy. *Nam* for, *esti* although *videbat* he saw *prælium* that a fight *delectæ legionis* of his chosen legion *cum equitatu* with the cavalry *fore* would be *sine ullo periculo* without any danger, *tamen* yet *non putabat* he did not think *committendum* that he ought to give cause, *ut* that *pulsis hostibus* when the enemy were repulsed, *posset* it might *dici* be said *eos* that they *circumventos* had been circumvented *ab se* by him *per fidem* through trust in *colloquio* in the conference. *Posteaquam* when *elatum est* it was told forth in *vulgus* among the commonalty *militum* of the soldiers, *qua arrogantia* what arrogance *Ariovistus* Ariovistus *usus* showing in *colloquio* in the conference, *interdixisset* had interdicted *Romanis* the Romans *omni Gallia* from all Gaul, *ejusque*

equites and [how] his horsemen *fecissent* had made *impetum* an attack *in nostros* upon our men, *utque* and how *ea res* that deed *diremisset* had broken off *colloquium* the conference, *multo major alacritas* much greater alacrity *studiumque majus* and a greater desire *pugnandi* of fighting *injectum est* was inspired *exercitus* in the army.

XLVII. *Biduo* post two days after, *Ariovistus* *Ariovistus mittit* sends *legatos* ambassadors *ad Cæsarem* to Cæsar [saying] *se* that he *velle* wished *agere* to treat *eum eo* with him *de his rebus* concerning those things *quæ* which *cæptæ essent* had been begun *agi* to be treated of *neque perfectæ essent* and had not been completed: *uti* that *aut* either *constitueret* he should appoint *diem* a day *colloquio* for holding a conference *iterum* a second time, *aut* or *si* if *minus vellet* he was less willing [to do] *id* that, *mitteret* he should send *ad se* to him *aliquem* some one *ex legatis* of his lieutenants. *Non visa est* there did not seem *Cæsari* to Cæsar *causa* [to be sufficient] cause *colloquendi* of holding a conference, *et* and *magis* the more *eo* on that account *quod* because *pridie* on the previous day *ejus diei* to that day *Germani* the Germans *non poterant* could not *retineri* be kept back *quin conjicerent* from casting *tela* their weapons *in nostros* at our men. *Existimabat* he thought *se* that he *missurum* would send *legatum* an ambassador *ex suis* from his men *ad eum* to him *magno cum periculo* with great danger, *et* and *subjecturum* would expose him *hominibus feris* to [such] savage men. *Visum est* it seemed *commodissimum* most convenient *mittere* to send *ad eum* to him *Caium Valerium Procillum* Caius Valerius Procillus, *filium* the son *Caii Valerii Caburi* of Caius Valerius Caburus, *adolescentulum* a young man *summa virtute* of the highest virtue *et* and *humanitate* humanity, (*cujus pater* whose father *donatus erat* had been presented *civitate* with the freedom of the state *a Caio Valerio Flacco* by Caius Valerius Flaccus) *et* both *propter fidem* on account of his faith, *et* and *prop-*

ter on account of *scientiam* his knowledge *linguæ Gallicæ* of the Gallic tongue, *qua* which *multa* to a great extent *Ariovistus* Ariovistus *jam* already *utebatur* made use of *longinqua consuetudine* by long practice, *et* and *quod* because *non esset* there would not be *in eo* in him *causa* any cause *peccandi* for offending *Germani* to the Germans; *et* and *Marcum Mettium* [to send with him] *Marcus Mettius*, *qui* who *usus erat* had enjoyed *hospitio* the hospitality *Ariovisti* of Ariovistus. *Mandavit* he gave instructions *his* to these, *ut* that *cognoscerent* they should take notice *quæ* what *Ariovistus* Ariovistus *diceret* should say, *et* and *referrent* report it *ad se* to him. *Quos* whom *quum* when *Ariovistus* Ariovistus *conspexisset* had beheld *apud se* with him *in castris* in the camp, *conclamavit* he exclaimed *exercitu suo præse* in the presence of his army: *Quid* why *venirent* did they come *ad se* to him? *An causa* for the sake *speculandi* of espying? *Conantes* when endeavouring *dicere* to speak *prohibuit* he forbade them, *et* and *conjecit* cast them *in catenas* into chains.

XLVIII. *Eodem die* the same day *promovit* he pushed forward *castra* his camp, *et* and *consedit* took up his ground *sub monte* under a mountain *sex millibus passuum* six thousand paces *a castris* from the camp *Cæsaris* of Cæsar. *Postridie* on the following day *eius diei* of that day, *transduxit* he led over *copias* his forces *præter castra* along the camp *Cæsaris* of Cæsar, *et* and *fecit* made *castra* a camp *duobus millibus passuum* two thousand paces *ultra eum* beyond him, *eo consilio* with this intent, *uti* that *intercluderet* he might shut off *Cæsarem* Cæsar *frumento* from corn *commeatuque* and his communication *qui* which *supportaretur* was kept up *ex Sequanis* from the Sequani *et* and *Æduis* the Ædui. *Ex eo die* from that day *Cæsar* Cæsar *produxit* led forth *suas copias* his forces *pro castris* in front of the camp *quinque dies continuos* five days together, *et* and *habuit* kept *aciem* his line *instructam* drawn out, *ut* that *si* if *Ariovistus* Ariovistus *vellet* should be willing *con-*

tendere to engage *prælio* in battle, *potestas* the opportunity *non deesset* might not be wanting *ei* to him. *Omnibus diebus* all these days *Ariovistus* Ariovistus *continuit* kept *exercitum* his army *castris* in his camp; *contendit* he engaged *quotidie* daily *equestri prælio* in a battle of cavalry. *Hoc* this *erat* was *genus* a kind *pugnæ* of fight *quo* in which *Germani* the Germans *exercuerant* had exercised *se* themselves. *Erant* there were *sex millia* six thousand *equitum* of cavalry, *pedites* infantry *totidem* as many *numero* in number, *velocissimi* most swift *ac* and *fortissimi* most brave; *quos* whom *singuli* each [of the cavalry] *delegerant* had chosen *singulos* singly *ex omni copia* from all the force *causa* for the sake *sue salutis* of his own safety. *Cum* his with these *versabantur* they used to act in *præliis* in battle, *ad hos* to these *equites* the cavalry *recipiebant* used to withdraw *se* themselves; *hi* these *concurrabant* used to run together, *si* if *erat* there was *quid* anything *durius* too difficult: *si* if *qui* any one, *accepto graviore vulnere* having received a serious wound, *deciderat* had fallen *equo* from his horse, *circumsistebant* they stood round him; *si* if *erat* *prædeundum* it was needful to advance *quo* to any place *longius* further [than usual], *aut* or *recipiendum* to retreat *celerius* more speedily, *tanta* so great *erat* was *celeritas* the rapidity *horum* of these men *exercitatione* by exercise, *ut* that, *sublevati* supported *jubis* by the manes *equorum* of the horses, *adæquarent* they equalled *cursum* their speed.

XLIX. *Ubi* when *Cæsar* Cæsar *intellexit* perceived *eum* that he *tenere* kept *se* himself *castris* in his camp, *ne prohiberetur* that he might not be cut off *diutius* any longer *commeatu* from his communications, *delegit* he chose *ultra eum locum* beyond that place, *quo in loco* in which place *Germani* the Germans *consederant* had taken their post, *circiter passus sexcentos* about six hundred paces *ab eis* from them, *locum* a spot *idoneum* fit for a camp, *acieque triplici instructa* and having drawn

up a triple line of battle, *venit* came *ad eum locum* to that place. *Jussit* he commanded *primam* the first *et* and *secundam aciem* second line, *esse* to be *in armis* under arms, *tertiam* the third *munire* to fortify *castra* the camp. *Hic locus* this place *aberat* was distant, *uti as dictum est* has been said, *circiter passus sexcentos* about six hundred paces *ab hoste* from the enemy. *Eo thither Ariovistus* Ariovistus *misit* sent *numero* in number *sexdecim millia hominum* sixteen thousand men *expedita* light-armed, *cum omni equitatu* with all the cavalry; *quæ copiae* which troops *perterrerent* were to frighten *nostros* our men, *et* and *prohiberent* were to prevent them *munitione* from entrenching. *Nihilo secius* nevertheless *Cæsar* Cæsar, *ut as constituerat* he had determined *ante* before, *jussit* commanded *duas acies* two lines *propulsare* to repel *hostem* the enemy, *tertiam* the third *perficere* to complete *opus* the work. *Munitis castris* when the camp was fortified *reliquit* he left *ibi* there *duas legiones* two legions *et* and *partem a part auxiliorum* of the allied troops; *reduxit* he led back *quatuor reliquas* the four others *in castra majora* into the greater camp.

L. *Proximodie* the next day, *instituto suo* according to his purpose, *Cæsar* Cæsar *eduxit* led out *copias suas* his troops *e castris utrisque* from both camps; *progressusque* and having advanced *paulum* a little *a majoribus* from the greater [camp], *instruxit* drew up *aciem* his line of battle, *fecitque* and furnished *hostibus* to the enemies *potestatem* the option *pugnandi* of fighting. *Ubi* when *intellexit* he perceived *eos* that they *ne tum quidem* not even then *prodire* came forth, *reduxit* he led back *exercitum* his army *circiter meridiem* about noon *in castra* into the camp. *Tum* then *denum* at length *Ariovistus* Ariovistus *misit* sent *partem* part *suarum copiarum* of his forces *quæ oppugnaret* to attack *castra minora* the lesser camp. *Pugnatum est* it was fought *acriter* fiercely *utrinque* on both sides, *usque ad vesperum* until the evening. *Occasu* at the setting *solis* of

the sun *Ariovistus* Ariovistus, *multis vulneribus* when many wounds *et* both *illatis* had been inflicted *et* and *acceptis* received, *reduxit* led back *suas copias* his forces *in castra* into his camp. *Quum* when *Cæsar* Cæsar *quæreret* inquired *ex captivis* of the captives *quam ob rem* for what cause *Ariovistus* Ariovistus *non decertaret* did not decide the matter *prælio* by a battle, *reperiebat* he found *hanc causam* that this was the cause: *quod* because *esset* there was *apud Germanos* among the Germans *ea consuetudo* this custom, *ut* that *matres-familie eorum* their matrons *declararent* should declare *sortibus* by lots *et* and *vaticinationibus* by prophecies *utrum* whether *esset* it would be *ex usu* to their advantage *necne* or not *prælium* that the battle *committi* should be ventured: *eas* [and] that they *dicere* said *ita* to this effect: *non esse fas* that it was not fated *Germanos* for the Germans *superare* to gain the day, *si* if *contendissent* they should contend *prælio* in battle *ante novam lunam* before the new moon.

LI. *Postridie* on the following day *ejus diei* of that day *Cæsar* Cæsar *reliquit* left *præsidio* as a protection *utrisque castris* to both camps *quod* what *visum est* seemed *esse* to be *satis* sufficient, *constituit* he placed *omnes alarios* all his auxiliaries *in conspectu* in sight *hostium* of the enemies *pro castris minoribus* in front of the lesser camp, *quod* because *minus valebat* he was less strong *multitudine* in the multitude *militum legionariorum* of his legionary soldiers *pro numero* compared with the number *hostium* of the enemies, *ut* that *uteretur* he might use *alariis* his auxiliary troops *ad speciem* for a show. *Ipse* himself, *triplici instructa acie* having drawn up a three-fold line of battle, *accessit* approached *usque ad castra* up to the camp *hostium* of the enemies. *Tum* then *demum* at length *Germani* the Germans *necessario* by compulsion *eduxerunt* led out *suas copias* their forces *castris* from the camp, *constitueruntque* and posted them *generatim* by their tribes, *paribusque intervallis* and at equal intervals, *Harudes* Haru-

dians, *Marcomannos* Marcomannians, *Triboccos* Triboccians, *Vangiones* Vangionians, *Nemetes* Nemetians, *Sedusios* Sedusians, *Suevos* Suevians, *circumdederuntque* and they surrounded *omnem aciem suam* all their line *rhedis* with carriages *et carris* and carts, *ne qua spes* that no hope *relinqueretur* might be left *in fuga* in flight. *Eo* thereon *imposuerunt* they set *mulieres* their women, *quæ* who *flentes* weeping *passis crinibus* with dishevelled hair, *implorabant* implored *milites* the soldiers *proficiscentes* as they set forth *ad prælium* to battle, *ne traderent* not to give up *se* them *in servitutem* into servitude *Romanis* to the Romans.

LII. *Cæsar* Cæsar *præfecit* appointed *legatos* lieutenants *et* and *questorem* a quæstor *singulos* each *singulis legionibus* to each legion, *uti* that *quisque* each man *haberet* might have *eos* them *testes* as witnesses *sua virtutis* of his valour. *Ipsæ* himself *commisit* began *prælium* the battle *a dextro cornu* on the right wing, *quod* because *adverterat* he had perceived *eam partem* that that part *hostium* of the enemies *esse* was *minime firmam* the least firm. *Ita acriter* so fiercely *nostri* did our men *fecerunt* make *impetum* an assault *in hostes* on the enemies *signo dato* when the signal was given; *hostesque* and the enemies *procurrerunt* rushed forwards *ita repente* so suddenly *celeriterque* and speedily *ut* that *non daretur* there was not allowed *spatium* room *conijciendi* for casting *pila* their javelins *in hostes* against the enemies. *Rejectis pilis* having cast away their javelins, *pugnatum est* they fought *cominus* hand to hand *gladiis* with their swords. *At* but *Germani* the Germans, *facta phalange* having formed a phalanx *celeriter* with speed *ex consuetudine sua* according to their custom, *exceperunt* received *impetus* the onset *gladiatorum* of their swords. *Reperti sunt* there were found *complures nostri* several of our soldiers *qui* who *insilirent* leapt *in phalangas* upon the phalanxes, *et* and *renellerent* tore down *souta* the shields *manibus* with their hands, *et* and *vulnerarent* wounded them *desuper* from above. *Quum*

when *acies* the line *hostium* of the enemies *pulsa esset* had been repulsed *a sinistro cornu* from the left wing, *atque* and *conversa* turned in *fugam* to flight, *premebant* they pressed *nostram aciem* our line *vehementer* violently *a dextro cornu* on the right wing *multitudine* by the multitude *suorum* of their men. *Quum* when *Publius Crassus* *Publius Crassus*, *adolescens* a young man *qui* who *præerat* commanded *equitatu* the cavalry, *animadvertisset* had perceived *id* that, *quod* because *erat* he was *expeditior* more disengaged *quam* than *hi* those *qui* who *versabantur* were occupied *inter aciem* amid the fight, *misit* he sent *tertiam aciem* the third line *subsidio* as aid *nostris* to our men *laborantibus* who were toiling.

LIII. *Ita* thus *prælium* the battle *restitutum est* was renewed, *atque* and *omnes hostes* all the enemies *verterunt* turned *terga* their backs, *neque destiterunt* and did not cease *fugere* to flee *priusquam* before that *pervenerint* they arrived *ad flumen Rhenum* at the river Rhine, *circiter quinquaginta millia passuum* about fifty thousand paces *ex eo loco* from that place. *Ibi* there *verpauci* very few of them, *aut* either *confisi* trusting *viribus* to their strength, *contenderunt* strove *transnatare* to swim over, *aut* or *repererunt* found *sibi* for themselves *salutem* safety *intribus inventis* in barges which they discovered. *In his* among these *erat* was *Ariovistus* *Ariovistus*, *qui* who, *nactus* having met with *naviculam* a little bark *deligatam* bound *ad ripam* to the bank, *profugit* fled *ea* in it: *equites nostri* our horsemen *consequuti* following up *reliquos omnes* all the rest, *interfece-
runt* slew them. *Fuerunt* there were *duæ uxores* two wives *Ariovisti* of *Ariovistus*, *una* one *Sueva* a Suebian *natione* by nation, *quam* whom *eduxerat* he had brought *secum* with him *ab domo* from home; *altera* the other *Norica* a woman of *Noricum*, *soror* sister *regis Vocionis* of king *Vocio*, *quam* whom *duxerat* he had married in *Gallia* in Gaul, *missam* who had been sent *a fratre* by her brother. *Utræque* both *perierunt* perished *in ea fuga*

in that flight. *Duæ filia* two daughters *harum* of these *altera* one *occisa est* was slain, *altera* the other *capta est* was taken. *Caius Valerius Procillus* Caius Valerius Procillus, *quum* when *traheretur* he was dragged *a custodibus* by his guards *in fuga* in the flight *vinctus* bound *trinis catenis* with three chains, *incidit* lights in *Cæsarem* upon Cæsar *ipsum* himself *persequentem* pursuing *hostes* the enemies *equitatu* with the cavalry. *Quæ quidem res* which thing indeed *attulit* caused *Cæsari* to Cæsar *non minorem voluptatem* no less pleasure *quam* than *ipsa victoria* the victory itself, *quod* because *videbat* he saw *hominem honestissimum* the most honest man *provinciae Galliae* of the province of Gaul, *suum familiarem* his own familiar [friend] *et hospitem* and guest, *ereptum* saved *e manibus* out of the hands *hostium* of the enemies, *restitutum* and restored *sibi* to himself, *neque* nor *fortuna* had fortune *deminuerat* diminished *quidquam* anything *ejus calamitate* by his calamity *de tanta voluptate* from so much pleasure *et gratulatione* and congratulation. *Is* he *dicebat* told them *se præsentem* that in his own presence *consultum* it had been consulted *ter* three times *de se* about him *sortibus* by lots, *utrum* whether *statim necaretur* he should immediately be put to death *igni* by fire, *an* or *reservaretur* be kept *in aliud tempus* for another time; *se* that he *esse* was *incolumem* safe *beneficio* by the favour *sortium* of the lots. *Item* also *Marcus Mettius* Marcus Mettius *repertus est* was found *et* and *reductus* brought back *ad eum* to him.

LIV. *Hoc prælio nunciato* when this battle was told *trans Rhenum* beyond the Rhine, *Suevi* the Suevians, *qui* who *venerant* had come *ad ripas* to the banks *Rheni* of the Rhine, *cœperunt* began *reverti* to return *domum* home: *quos* whom *perterritos* in their terrified state, *Ubi* the Ubii, *qui* who *incolunt* dwell *proximi* nearest to *Rhenum* the Rhine, *insequuti* pursuing, *occiderunt* slew *magnum numerum* a great number *ex his* of them. *Cæsar* Cæsar *confectis duobus bellis* having finished two wars *maximis* of the greatest importance *in æstate* in

onesummer, *paullo maturius* rather earlier *quam* than *tempus* the season *anni* of the year *postulabat* required, *deduxit* led off *exercitum* his army *in hiberna* into winter quarters *in Sequanos* among the Sequani; *præfecit* he appointed *Labienum* Labienus *hibernis* over the winter quarters: *ipse* himself *profectus est* set out *in Citeriorem Galliam* into Hither Gaul *ad conventus agendos* to hold the assemblies.

Book II.

I. *Quum* when *Cæsar Cæsar esset* was in *Citeriore Gallia* in Hither Gaul *in hibernis* in winter quarters *ita* so *uti* as *supra demonstravimus* we have shown above, *crebri rumores* frequent rumours *afferebantur* were brought *ad eum* to him, *itemque* and also *certior fiebat* he was informed *litteris* by the letters *Labieni* of Labienus, *omnes Belgas* that all the Belgæ, *quam* which *dixeramus* we had said *esse* was *tertiam partem* the third part *Galliæ* of Gaul, *conjurare* were conspiring *contra populum Romanum* against the Roman people, *dareque* and were giving *obsides* hostages *inter se* among themselves; *has* that these *esse* were *causas* the causes *conjurandi* of conspiring: *primum* first *quod* because *vererentur* they feared *ne* lest, *omni Gallia pacata* all Gaul being appeased, *noster exercitus* our army *adduceretur* should be led *ad eos* against them: *deinde* then *quod* because *sollicitarentur* they were solicited *ab nonnullis Gallis* by some of the Gauls; *partim* partly *qui* those who, *ut* as *noluerant* they had been unwilling *Germanos* that the Germans *versari* should busy themselves *diutius* any longer in *Gallia* in Gaul, *ita* in the same way *moeste ferebant* bore it impatiently *exercitum* that the army *populi Romani* of the Roman people *hiemare* should winter *atque* and *inveterascere* become

habituated in *Gallia* in Gaul, *partim* partly *qui* those who *mobilitate* through changeableness *et* and *levitate* lightness *animi* of mind *studebant* were eager *novis imperiis* for new governments; *ab nonnullis* by some *etiam* also, *quod* because *regna* kingdoms *vulgo* generally *occupabantur* were seized *a potentioribus* by the more powerful in *Gallia* in Gaul, *atque* and *his* those *qui* who *habebant* had *facultates* means *ad conducendos homines* for levying men, *qui* and who *poterant* were able *minus facile* less easily *consequi* to accomplish *eam rem* that affair in *imperio nostro* under our government.

II. *Cæsar* *Cæsar commotus* being roused *iis nunciis* by these messengers *litterisque* and letters, *conscripsit* levied *duas novas legiones* two new legions in *Citeriore Gallia* in Hither Gaul, *et* and, *inita æstate* at the beginning of summer, *misit* sent *Quintum Pedium* *Quintus Peditus*, *legatum* his lieutenant, *qui deduceret* to lead them in *interiorem Galliam* into the interior of Gaul. *Ipse* himself, *quum* when *primum* first *inciperet* there began *esse* to be *copia* plenty *pabuli* of corn. *venit* came *ad exercitum* to the army: *dat* he gives *negotium* a commission *Senonibus* to the Senones. *reliquisque Gallis* and to the rest of the Gauls, *qui* who *erant* were *finitimi* bordering *Belgis* on the Belgæ, *uti cognoscant* to take notice *quæ* what things *gerantur* are being done *apud eos* among them, *faciantque* and to make *se* himself *certiorem* acquainted *de his rebus* concerning these things. *Hi* they *omnes* all *nunciaverunt* reported *constanter* uniformly, *manus* that bands *cogi* were being collected, *exercitum* an army *conduci* was being assembled in *unum locum* into one place. *Tum vero* but then *non existimavit* he did not think it *dubitandum* to be doubted *quin* but that *proficisceretur* he should set out *ad eos* against them [*die duodecimo* on the twelfth day]. *Re frumentaria provisâ* the affair of provisions being provided, *movet* he moves *castra* the camp, *pervenitque* and arrives *diebus*

quindecim circiter in about fifteen days *ad fines* on the borders *Belgarum* of the Belgæ.

III. *Quum* when *venisset* he had come *eo* thither *de improviso* on a sudden *celeriusque* and sooner *omni opinione* than all expectation, *Remi* the Remi, *qui* who *sunt* are *proximi* the nearest *Galliæ* to Gaul *ex Belgis* of the Belgæ, *miserunt* sent *legatos* ambassadors *ad eum* to him, *Iccium* *Iccius et* and *Antebrogium* *Antebrogius*, *primos* the first men *civitatis* of the state, *qui dicerent* to say *permittere* that they gave up *se* themselves *suaque omnia* and all their goods *in fidem* into the faith *atque* and *potestatem* power *populi Romani* of the Roman people, *neque se consensisse* and that they had not joined themselves *cum reliquis Belgis* with the rest of the Belgæ, *neque* nor *conjurasse* conspired *omnino* at all *contra populum Romanum* against the Roman people; *paratosque esse* and were prepared *et* both *dare* to give *obsides* hostages *et* and *facere* to execute *imperata* his commands, *et* and *recipere* to receive them *oppidis* in their towns, *et* and *juvare* to supply them *frumento* with corn *cæterisque rebus* and with the other things [needful]: *reliquos omnes Belgas* that all the remaining Belgæ *esse* were in *armis* in arms, *Germanosque* and that the Germans *qui* who *incolunt* live *cis Rhenum* on this side the Rhine, *conjunxisse* had joined *sese* themselves *cum his* with these; *tantamque* and so great *esse* was *furorem* the infatuation *eorum omnium* of all of them, *ut* that *ne Suessiones quidem* not even the Suessiones *potuerint* could *deterrehere* deter *fratres suos* their brothers *consanguineosque* and kinsmen, *qui* who *utantur* enjoy *eodem jure* the same jurisdiction *et* and *iisdem legibus* the same laws, *habeantque* and have *unum imperium* one government *unum magistratum* and one magistrate *cum ipsis* with themselves, *quin consentirent* from making a league *cum his* with them.

IV. *Quum* when *quæreret* he asked *ab his* from these *quæ civitates* what states, *quantæque* and how

powerful, *essent* were *in armis* in arms, *et* and *quod* what *possent* they could do *in bello* in war, *reperiebat* be found *sic* as follows: *plerosque Belgas* that most of the Belgæ *esse ortos* were sprung *ab Germanis* from the Germans, *transductosque* and having been led across *Rhenum* the Rhine *antiquitus* in former days, *propter* on account of *fertilitatem* the fertility *loci* of the place, *consedis* had settled *ibi* there, *expulsi* and expelled *Gallos* the Gauls, *qui* who *incoluerent* inhabited *ea loca* those places, *esque* and were *solos* the only ones *qui* who, *memoria* in the memory *nostrorum patrum* of our fathers, *omni Gallia vexata* when all Gaul was troubled, *prohibuerint* prohibited *Teutones* the Teutoni *Cimbrosque* and the Cimbri *ingredi* from entering *intra suos fines* within their territories. *Qua ex re* from which thing *feri* that it resulted *uti* that *memoria* from the memory *earum rerum* of those things *sumerent* they assumed *sibi* to themselves *magnam auctoritatem* great authority, *magnosque spiritus* and great spirit *in re militari* in military affairs. *Remi* the Remi *dicebant* said *se* that they *habere* had *explorata* explored *omnia* all things *de numero* concerning the number *eorum* of them; *propterea* on this account *quod* that *conjuncti* being joined *propinquitatibus* by connections *affinitatibusque* and by relationships, *cognoverint* they knew *quantam multitudinem* what number *quisque* each *pollicitus sit* had promised *in communi concilio* in the common council *Belgarum* of the Belgæ *ad id bellum* to that war. *Bellovacos* that the Bellovaci *plurimum valere* were most influential *inter eos* among them, *et* both *virtute* by their valour *et* and *auctoritate* by authority *et* and *numero* by the number *hominum* of their men; *hos* that these *posse* could *conficere* collect *millia armata centum* a hundred thousand armed men, *pollicitos* that they had promised *electa* chosen *ex eo numero* from that number *sexaginta millia* sixty thousand, *postulareque* and demanded *sibi* for themselves *im-*

perium the chief command *totius belli* of the whole war. *Suessiones* that the *Suessiones esse* were *suos finitimos* their neighbours; *possidere* that they possessed *agros* lands *latissimos* most wide *feracissimosque* and most fruitful. *Apud eos* that among them *fuisse* was *regem* a king, *etiam* even *nostra memoria* within our recollection, *Divitiacum* Divitiacus, *potentissimum* the most powerful *totius Galliae* of the whole of Gaul, *qui* who *obtinuerit* held *imperium* the chief command *quam* not only *magnae partis* of a great part *harum regionum* of these countries, *tum etiam* but also *Britanniae* of Britain: *nunc* that now *Galbam* Galba *esset* was *regem* their king, *ad hunc* that to him, *propter* on account of *justitiam* his justice *prudentiamque* and his prudence, *deferri* was referred *voluntate* by the consent *omnium* of all *summum* the chief command, *totius belli* of the whole war: *habere* that they had *oppida* towns *numero* in number *duodecim* twelve, *polliceri* that they had promised *quingenta millia armata* fifty thousand armed men. *Nervios* that the *Nervii*, *qui* who *habeantur* are considered *maxime feri* the most fierce *inter ipsos* among them, *absintque* and are distant *longissime* the farthest, *totidem* [had promised] the same number *Atrebatas* that the *Atrebatas* [had promised], *quindecim millia* fifteen thousand; *Ambianos* the *Ambiani* *decem millia* ten thousand; *Morinos* the *Morini* *viginti quinque millia* twenty-five thousand; *Menapios* the *Menapii* *novem millia* nine thousand; *Caletos* the *Caleti* *decem millia* ten thousand; *Velocasses* the *Velocasses* *et* and *Veromanduos* the *Veromandui* *totidem* the same number; *Aduatucos* the *Aduatuci* *viginti novem millia* twenty-nine thousand; *arbitrari* and that they thought *Condrusos* that the *Condrusi*, *Eburones* the *Eburones*, *Cæresos* the *Cæresii*, *Pæmanos* and the *Pæmani*, *qui* who *appellantur* are called *uno nomine* by one name *Germani* Germans, *ad quadraginta millia* as many as forty thousand.

V. *Cæsar* *Cæsar*, *cohortatus* having exhorted *Remis*

the Remi, *liberaliterque prosequutus* and having touched upon them liberally *oratione* in his speech, *jussit* ordered *omnem senatum* all the senate *convenire* to come together *ad se* to him, *liberosque* and the children *principum* of the chiefs *adduci* to be brought *ad se* to him *obsides* as hostages. *Quæ omnia* all which things *facta sunt* were done *diligenter* diligently *ab his* by them *ad diem* to the day. *Ipsè* himself, *cohortatus* having exhorted *Divitiacum* Divitiacus *Ædum* the *Æduan* *magno opere* with great earnestness, *docet* informs him *quanto opere* how greatly *intersit* it is to the interest *reipublicæ* of the republic *communisque salutatis* and of the common safety *manus* that the bands *hostium* of the enemies *distineri* should be kept separate, *ne lest confligendum sit* it should be necessary to fight *cum tanta multitudine* with so great a multitude *uno tempore* at one time. *Id* that this *posse* can *fieri* be done, *si* if *Ædui* the *Ædui* *introduxerint* shall lead *suas copias* their forces *in fines* into the territories *Bellovacorum* of the Bellovaci, *et* and *cæperint* begin *populari* to lay waste *eorum agros* their fields. *His mandatis* with these commands, *dimittit* he dismisses *eum* him *ab se* from himself. *Postquam* after that *vidit* he saw *omnes copias* all the forces *Belgarum* of the Belgæ *venire* were coming *ad se* to him *coactas* being collected *in unum locum* into one place, *cognovitque* and learnt *ab his exploratoribus* from those spies *quos* whom *miserat* he had sent, *et* and *ab Remis* from the Remi, *nec [non] jam longe abesse* that they were now not far distant, *maturavit* he hastened *transducere exercitum* to lead his army over *flumen Axonam* the river Axona, *quod* which *est* is *in extremis finibus* in the extreme territories *Remorum* of the Remi, *atque* and *posuit* placed *ibi* there *castra* his camp. *Quæ res* which act *et* both *muniebat* protected *unum latus* one side *castrorum* of the camp *ripis* by the banks *fluminis* of the river, *et* and *reddebat* rendered *quæ* those which *essent* were *post eum* behind

him *tuta* safe *ab hostibus* from the enemies, *et* and *effeciebat* brought it to pass *ut* that *commeatus* provision *posset* could *sine periculo* without danger *portari* be brought *ad eum* to him *ab Remis* from the Remi *reliquisque civitatibus* and the remaining states. *In eo flumine* on that river *erat* was *pons* a bridge; *ibi* there *ponit* he places *præsidium* a guard, *et* and *in altera parte* at another part *fluminis* of the river *relinquit* he leaves *Quintum Titurium Sabinum* Quintus Titurius Sabinus *legatum* his lieutenant *cum sex cohortibus* with six cohorts. *Jubet* he gives orders *munire* to fortify *castra* the camp *vallo* with a rampart *in altitudinem* to the height *duodecim pedum* of twelve feet *fossaque* and a trench *duodeviginti pedum* of eighteen feet.

VI. *Ab his castris* from this camp *oppidum* a town *Remorum* of the Remi, *nomine* by name *Bibrax* Bibrax, *aberat* was distant *millia passuum octo* eight miles. *Id* that place *Belgæ* the Belgæ *cœperunt* began *oppugnare* to storm *ex itinere* on their march *magno impetu* with great violence. *Sustentatum est* it was sustained *ægre* with difficulty *eo die* on that day. *Oppugnatio* the mode of storming *est* is *eadem* the same *Gallorum* of the Gauls *atque* and *Belgarum* of the Belgæ. *Ubi* when, *multitudine* a multitude *hominum* of men *circumjecta* having been placed round *totis mœnibus* all the walls, *lapides* stones *œpti sunt* have begun *jaci* to be thrown *undique* from all sides *in murum* against the wall, *murisque* and the wall *nudatus est* is stripped *defensoribus* of the defenders, *testudine facta* having made a testudo, *succedunt* they come up under *portas* the gates *subruuntque* and undermine *murum* the wall. *Quod* which *tum* then *fiebat* was done *facile* easily. *Nam* for *quum* whereas *tanta multitudo* so great a number *conjicerent* were throwing stones *ac* and *tela* darts, *nulli erat* no one had *potestas* the power *consistendi* of standing *in muro* on the wall. *Quum* when *nox* night *fecisset* had made *finem* an end

oppugnandi of attacking, *Iccius Iccius*, *Remus* a Roman *summa nobilitate* of the highest rank *et gratia* and interest *inter suos* among his countrymen, *qui* who *tum* then *præerat* was in command *oppido* over the town, *unus* one *ex his* out of those *qui* who *venerant* had come *legati* as ambassadors *de pace* concerning peace *ad Cæsarem* to Cæsar, *mittit* sends *nuncios* messengers *ad eum* to him, *nisi* that unless *subsidium* aid *submittatur* be sent *sibi* to him, *sese* himself *non posse* is not able *sustinere* to maintain his post *diutius* any longer.

VII. *Cæsar* Cæsar, *usus* using *iisdem* the same *ducibus* for guides *qui* who *venerant* had come *nuncii* as messengers *ab Iccio* from Iccius, *mittit* sends *eo* thither *de media nocte* about the middle of the night *Numidas* some Numidian *et Cretas sagittarios* and Cretan archers *et* and *Baleares funditores* Balearian slingers *subsidio* as a reinforcement *oppidanis* to the townsmen, *quorum adventu* by whose arrival *et* both *studium* the resolution *propugnandi* of defending themselves *cum spe* with the hope *defensionsis* of defence *accessit* was added *Remis* to the Remi *et* and *de eadem causa* from the same cause *spes* the hope *potiundi oppidi* of gaining the town *discessit* departed *hostibus* from the enemies. *Itaque* therefore *morati* having delayed *paullisper* a short time *apud oppidum* before the town *depopulatique* and having laid waste *agros* the fields *Remorum* of the Remi, *incensisque omnibus vicis* and having set fire to all the villages *ædificiisque* and houses *quæ* which *poterant* they could *adire* come near to, *contenderunt* they marched *omnibus copiis* with all their forces *ad castra* to the camp *Cæsaris* of Cæsar *et* and *posuerunt* placed *castra* their camp *minus duobus millibus passuum* less than two miles off. *Quæ castra* which camp *ut significabatur* as appeared *fumo* by the smoke *atque ignibus* and by the fires *vatebant* extended *amplius* more *octo millibus passuum* than eight miles *in latitudinem* in length.

VIII. *Cæsar* *Cæsar* *primo* at first, *et* both *propter* on account of *multitudinem* the great number *hostium* of the enemy *et* and *propter* on account of *eximiam opinionem* the extraordinary reputation *virtutis* of their valour, *statuit* resolved *supersedere* to abstain *prælio* from battle; *tamen* nevertheless *periclitabatur* he essayed [*solicitationibus* by attacks] *quotidie* daily *equestribus præliis* in skirmishes of cavalry, *quid* what *hostis* the enemy *posset* could do *virtute* in valour *et* and *quid* what *nostri* our men *auderent* would venture. *Ubi* when *intellexit* he perceived *nostros* that our men *non esse* were not *inferiores* inferior, *loco* on a spot *pro castris* before the camp *opportuno* opportune *atque idoneo* and fit *natura* by nature *ad aciem instruendam* to draw up a line of battle, (*quod* because *is collis* that hill, *ubi* where *castra* the camp *posita erant* was placed, *editus* elevated *paullulum* a little *ex planitie* out of the plain, *patebat* extended *adversus* in front *tantum loci* as much of space in *latitudinem* in width *quantum* as *acies* the army *instructa* drawn up *poterat* could *occupare* occupy, *et habebat* and had *dejectus* descents *ex utraque parte* on either part *lateris* of side *et* and *in fronte* in front *lenitur fastigatus* gently sloping, *redibat* fell back *paullulum* a little *ad planitiem* to the plain) *ab utroque latere* from either side *ejus collis* of that hill *obduxit* he traced out *transversam fossam* a transverse ditch *circiter quadringentorum passuum* of about four hundred paces [in length] *et* and *ad extremas fossas* at the extreme ends of the ditches *constituit* placed *castella* castles, *ibique* and there *collocavit* he placed *tormenta* engines, *ne* lest, *quum* when *intruxisset* he had drawn up *aciem* his line, *hostes* the enemy, *quod* because *tantum poterant* they were so powerful *multitudine* in number, *possent* might be able *pugnantes* fighting *ab lateribus* on the flanks *circumvenire* to surround *suos* his own men. *Hoc facto* this being done, *duabus legionibus* with the two legions *quas* which *proxime conseripserant* he had

just levied *possent* [that] they might *duci* be led up *subsidio* as a reinforcement *qua* anywhere, *constituit* he placed *reliquas sex legiones* the remaining six legions *pro castris* before the camp *in acie* in line of battle. *Hostes* the enemies *item* also *instruxerant* had drawn up *suas copias* their forces *eductas* led forth *ex castris* out of the camp.

IX. *Erat* there was *palus* a morass *non magna* of no great extent *inter nostrum* [exercitum] between our army *atque* and *hostium* that of the enemy. *Hostes* the enemies *expectabant* waited to see *si* if *nostri* our men *transirent* should cross *hanc* this: *nostri autem* but our men, *si* if *initium* a beginning *transeundi* of crossing *fieret* should be made *ab illis* by them, *parati erant* were prepared *in armis* in arms *ut aggredierentur* to attack them *impeditos* whilst in disorder. *Interim* in the meantime *contendebatur* there was a struggle *prælio equestri* in a cavalry battle *inter duas acies* between the two lines. *Ubi* when *neutri* neither *faciunt* make *initium* a beginning *transeundi* of crossing, *prælio* the battle *equitum* of cavalry *secundiore* being more favourable *nostris* to our men, *Cæsar* *reduxit* led back *suos* his men *in castra* into the camp. *Hostes* the enemy *protinus* immediately *contenderunt* marched *ex eo loco* from that place *ad flumen Axonam* to the river Axona, *quod* which *demonstratum est* has been shown *esse* to be *post nostra castra* behind our camp. *Ibi* there *vadis repertis* having found a ford, *conati sunt* they endeavoured *transducere* to lead across *partem* a part *suarum copiarum* of their forces, *eo consilio* with this design *ut* that *si* if *possent* they could. *expugnarent* they might storm *castellum* the castle *cui* over which *Quintus Titurius* *Quintus Titurius legatus* the lieutenant *præerat* was in command, *interseinderentque* and cut off *pontem* the bridge; *si* but if *minus potuissent* they should not be able, *popularentur* they might lay waste *agros* the fields *Remorum* of the Remi *qui* who *erant*

were *magno usui* of great use *nobis* to us *ad gerendum bellum* for carrying on the war, *prohiberentque* and might cut off *nostros* our men *communitu* from their communications.

X. *Cæsar* Cæsar, *certior factus* having been informed *ab Titurio* by Titurius, *transducit* leads over *noctem* the bridge *omnem equitatum* all his cavalry *et Numidas* and Numidians *levis armaturæ* of light armour, *funditores* slingers *sagittariosque* and archers, *atque* and *contendit* marches *ad eos* against them. *Pugnatum est* the battle was fought *acriter* fiercely *in eo loco* in that place. *Nostri* our men *aggressi* attacking *hostes* the enemies *impeditos* disordered *in flumine* in the river, *occiderunt* slew *magnum numerum* a great number *eorum* of them. *Reliquos* the rest, *conantes* endeavouring *audacissime* most audaciously *transire* to cross *per corpora eorum* over their bodies, *repulerunt* they repulsed *multitudine* by a multitude *telorum* of darts; *primos* the foremost, *qui* who *transierant* had crossed, *circumventos* surrounded *equitatu* by their cavalry, *interfecerunt* they cut to pieces. *Ubi* when *hostes* the enemies *intellegerunt* perceived *spem* that their hope *fefellisse se* had deceived them *et* both *de expugnando oppido* of storming the town *et* and *de flumine transeundo* of crossing the river, *neque viderunt* and did not see *nostros* our men *progredi* come forward *in locum iniquiorem* into a more unfavourable place *causa* for the purpose *pugnandi* of fighting, *atque* and [when] *res frumentaria* the supply of provisions *cæpit* began *deficere ipsos* to fail them, *constituerunt* they resolved, *concilio convocato* having called a council, *esse* that it was *optimum* best *quemque* that each *reverti* should return *domum suam* to his own home, *et* and *convenirent* that they should come together *undique* from all sides *ad eos defendendos* to defend those *quorum in fines* into whose territories *Romani* the Romans *introduxissent* should lead *exercitum* their army *primum* first; *ut* that *decertarent*

they might fight *potius* rather in *suis finibus* within their own borders *quam* than in *alienis* within those of others, *et* and *uterentur* that they might use *copiis domesticis* their domestic means *rei frumentariæ* for supplying provisions. *Hæc quoque ratio* this argument also, *cum reliquis causis* together with their other reasons, *deduxit* led *eos* them *ad eam sententiam* to that plan, *quod* because *cognoverant* they had learnt *Divitiacum* that Divitiacus *atque* and *Æduos* the Ædui *appropinquare* were approaching *finibus* to the borders *Bellovacorum* of the Bellovaci. *Non poterat* it was not possible *his persuaderi* for these tribes to be persuaded *ut morarentur* to delay *diutius* longer *neque ferrent* and not bear *auxilium* aid *suis* to their friends.

XI. *Ea re* that matter *constituta* having been settled, *egressi* having gone out *castris* from their camp *secunda vigilia* in the second watch *magno cum strepitu* with great noise *ac tumultu* a d tumult, *nullo certo ordine* without any fixed order, *neque imperio* nor authority, *quum* whilst *quisque* each *peteret* tried to get *primum locum* the first place *itineris* of the march *sibi* for himself, *et* and *properaret* was in a hurry *pervenire* to arrive *domum* home, *fecerunt* they brought it to pass *ut* that *profectio* their departure *videretur* appeared *consimilis* similar *fugæ* to a flight. *Cæsar* Cæsar *statim* immediately *hæc re cognita* having learnt this fact *per speculatores* by his scouts, *veritus* fearing *insidias* an ambush, *quod* because *nondum perspexerat* he had not yet seen *qua de causa* from what cause *discederent* they were departing, *continuit* kept *exercitum* the army *equitatumque* and cavalry *castris* within his camp. *Prima luce* at the first dawn, *re confirmata* when the fact had been confirmed *ab exploratoribus* by his scouts, *præmisit* he sent forward *omnem equitatum* all his cavalry, *qui moraretur* to delay *novissimum agmen* their rear-guard. *His* over these *præfecit* he appointed *legatos* lieutenants *Quintum Pedium* Quintus Pedius *ei* and *Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam* Lucius Aurun-

culeius Cotta. *Jussit* he commanded *Titum Labienum*. Titus Labienus *legatum* the lieutenant *subsequi* to follow behind *cum tribus legionibus* with three legions. *Hi* these *adorti* having attacked *novissimos* the last of them *et* and *prosequuti* having pursued them *multa milli passuum* many miles, *conceiderunt* cut to pieces *magnam multitudinem* a great multitude *eorum* of them *fugientium* fleeing, *quum* whilst *ab extremo agmine* in the rear-guard *ad quos* those to whom *ventum erat* they had come, *consisterent* stood their ground, *sustinerentque* and sustained *fortiter* with bravery *impetum* the attack *nostrorum militum* of our soldiers; *priores* but the foremost (*quod* because *viderentur* they seemed *abesse* to be away *a periculo* from the danger, *neque continerentur* and were not kept together *ulla necessitate* by any necessity *neque imperio* or authority), *exaudito clamore* when they heard the clamour, *perturbatis ordinibus* their ranks being thrown into disorder, *omnes* all *ponerent* placed *præsidium* protection *sibi* for themselves *in fuga* in flight. *Ita* thus *sine ullo periculo* without any danger *nostris* our men *interfecerunt* slew *tantam multitudinem* so great a multitude *eorum* of them *quantum* as *fuit* was *spatium* the extent *diei* of the day: *sub occasumque* and about the setting *solis* of the sun *destiterunt* they left off *receperuntque* and withdrew *se* themselves *in castra* into the camp, *ut* as *erat imperatum* had been commanded.

XII. *Postridie* on the morrow *ejus diei* of that day *Cæsar* Cæsar *priusquam* before that *hostes* the enemies *reciperent* could recover *se* themselves *ex terrore* from their terror *ac fuga* and flight, *duxit* led *exercitum* his army *in fines* into the territories *Suessionum* of the Suessiones, *qui* who *erant* were *proximi* nearest *Remis* to the Remi, *et* and *magno itinere confecto* having accomplished a long march, *contendit* directed his course *ad oppidum Noviodunum* to the town of Noviodunum. *Conatus* having endeavoured *ex itinere* on his march

expugnare to take by storm *id* that town, *quod* which *audiebat* he heard *esse* to be *vacuum* empty *ab defensoribus* of defenders, *non potuit* he was unable *expugnare* to take it by storm, *propter latitudinem* on account of the breadth *fossæ* of the ditch, *altitudinemque* and the height *muri* of the wall, *paucis defendentibus* though few defended it. *Castris munitis* having fortified his camp, *cœpit* he began *agere* to bring up *vineas* pent-houses, *comparareque* and to get together *quæ* the things which *erant* were *usui* of use *ad oppugnandum* to attack the town. *Interim* meanwhile *omnis multitudo* all the multitude *Suessionum* of the *Suessiones* *convenit* came together *ex fuga* from their flight *in oppidum* into the town *proxima nocte* the following night. *Vineis* the pent-houses *celeriter actis* having been speedily brought up *ad oppidum* to the town, *aggere jacto* a rampart having been thrown up, *turribusque constitutis* and towers built, *Galli* the Gauls, *permoti* astonished *magnitudine* by the greatness *operum* of the works, *quæ* which *neque viderant* they had neither seen *neque audierant* nor heard, *et* and *celeritate* by the speed *Romanorum* of the Romans, *mittunt* send *legatos* ambassadors *ad Cæsarem* to Cæsar *de deditione* about a capitulation, *et* and *petentibus Remis* by the intercession of the Remi, *ut* that *conservarentur* their lives should be spared, *impetrant* they obtain their request.

XIII. *Cæsar* Cæsar, *obsidibus acceptis* having received as hostages *primis* the chief men *civitatis* of the state *atque* and *duobus filiis* two sons *regis ipsius Galbæ* of King Galba himself, *armisque omnibus* and all the arms *ex oppido* from the town *traditis* having been given up, *accepit* received *Suessiones* the *Suessiones* *in deditionem* to a surrender: *duxitque* and led *exercitum* his army *in Bellovacus* to the Bellovacii. *Qui* who *quum* when *contulissent se* they had taken themselves *suaque omnia* and all their effects *in oppidum* into the town *Bratuspantium* of Bratuspantium, *atque* and *Cæsar*

Cæsar abesset was distant *cum exercitu* with the army *circiter* about *quinque millia passuum* five miles *ab eo oppido* from that town; *omnes* all *maiores natu* who were more advanced in age, *egressi* having come out *ex oppido* from the town, *cæperunt* began *tendere* to stretch out *manus* their hands *ad Cæsarem* to Cæsar *et* and *significare* to signify *se* with their voice *sese* that they *venire* would come in *ejus fidem* into his faith *ac potestatem* and power, *neque contendere* and would not contend *armis* in arms *contra populum Romanum* against the Roman people. *Item* also *quum* when *accessisset* he had come *ad oppidum* to the town *poneretque* and was pitching *castra* his camp *ibi* there, *pueri* the boys *mulieresque* and the women *passis manibus* stretching out their hands *ex muro* from the wall, *suo more* according to their manner *petierunt* asked *pacem* peace *ab Romanis* from the Romans.

XIV. *Pro his* on behalf of these *Divitiacus* *Divitiacus* (*nam* for *post discessum* after the departure *Belgarum* of the Belgæ, *copiis* the forces *Æduorum* of the *Ædui dimissis* being dismissed, *reverterat* he had returned *ad eum* to him) *facit* makes *verba* this speech: "*Bellovacos* that the *Bellovaci* *fuisse* had been *omni tempore* at all times *in fide* in the faith *atque amicitia* and friendship *civitatis Æduæ* of the *Æduan* state: *impulsos* that urged *ab suis principibus* by their chiefs (*qui* who *dicerent* said *Æduos* that the *Ædui redactos* reduced in *servitutem* to slavery *a Cæsare* by Cæsar *perferre* were enduring *omnes indignitates* all indignities *contumeliasque* and insults), *et defecisse* they both had revolted *ab Æduis* from the *Ædui et* and *bellum intulisse* had waged war *populo Romano* on the Roman people. *Qui* that those who *fuissent* had been *principes* the originators *hujus consilii* of this course of action *profugisse* had fled in *Britanniam* into Britain *quod* because *intelligerent* they perceived *quantam calamitatem* how great a calamity *intulissent* they had brought

vivitati on the state. *Non solum* that not only *Bellovacos* the Bellovaci, *sed* but *etiam* also *Æduos* the Ædui *pro his* on their behalf *petere* begged *ut utatur* that he would exercise *sua clementia* his mercy *ac mansuetudine* and clemency in *eos* towards them. *Quod* which *si fecerit* if he did, *amplificaturum* that he would extend *auctoritatem* the authority *Æduorum* of the Ædui *apud omnes Belgas* among all the Belgæ *quorum auxiliis* by whose aid *atque opibus* and resources *consuerint* they were accustomed *sustentare* to support *si qua bella* whatever wars *inciderint* arose."

XV. *Cæsar* Cæsar *dixit* said *sese* that he, *causa* for the sake *honoris* of the honour *Divitiaci* of Divitiacus *atque* and *Æduorum* of the Ædui, *recepturum* would receive *eos* them in *fidem* into faith *et conservaturum* and save them: *sed* but *quod* because *civitas* the state *erat* was *magna auctoritate* of great authority *inter Belgas* among the Belgæ *atque* and *præstabat* exceeded *multitudine* in the number *hominum* of its people; *poposcit* he demanded *sexcentos obsides* six hundred hostages. *His traditis* these having been given, *omnibusque armis* and all the arms *ex oppido* from the town *collatis* having been collected, *pervenit* he arrived *ab eo loco* from that place in *fines* into the territories *Ambianorum* of the Ambiani, *qui* who *dediderunt* surrendered *se* themselves *suaque omnia* and all their goods *sine mora* without delay. *Nervii* the Nervii *attingebant* touched on *eorum fines* their territories; *quorum de natura* concerning whose nature *moribusque* and manners *Cæsar* Cæsar, *quum* when *quereret* he inquired, *reperiebat* found *sic* as follows: *Esse* that there was *nullum aditum* no access *mercatoribus* for merchants *ad eos* among them, *pati* that they suffered *nil vini* no wine *reli quarumque rerum* and other things *pertinentium* appertaining *ad luxuriam* to luxury *inferri* to be imported; *quod* because *existimarent* they thought *animos* that their spirits relan-

guescere became enervated *his rebus* by these things *et* and *virtutem* their valour *remitti* relaxed; *esse* that they were *homines feros* savage men *magnæque virtutis* and of great bravery: *increpitare* that they upbraided *atque incusare* and blamed *reliquos Belgas* the rest of the Belgæ *qui* who *dedidissent* had surrendered *se* themselves *populo Romano* to the Roman people *proieci-*
sentque and had cast aside *patriam virtutem* their native valour: *confirmare* that they declared *se* that they *neque* neither *missuros* would send *legatos* ambas-
sadors neque nor *accepturos* would receive *ullam con-*
ditionem any terms *pacis* of peace.

XVI. *Quum* when *fecisset* he had made *iter* his march *triduum* three days *per eorum fines* through their terri-
 tories, *inveniebat* he found out *ex captivis* from some
 prisoners *Sabim flumen* that the river Sabis *abesse* was
 distant *non amplius* not more *decem millia passuum*
 than ten miles *ab suis castris* from his camp: *omnes*
Nervios that all the Nervii *consedissee* had encamped
trans id flumen beyond that river *ibique* and there *ex-*
spectare were awaiting *adventum* the coming *Roma-*
norum of the Romans *una cum* together with *Atreba-*
tibus the Atrebatæ *et Veromanduis* and the Veromandui
finitimis suis their neighbours; *nam* for *persuaserant*
 they had persuaded *his utrisque* both these *uti experi-*
entur to try *eandem fortunam* the same fortune *belli*
 of war; *copias* that the forces *etiam* also *Aduatu-*
corum of the Aduatuci *expectari* were expected *ab*
his by them, *atque* and *esse* were *in itinere* on the
 march; *conjecisse* that they had put *mulieres* the
 women *quique* and those who *viderentur* seemed *inutiles*
 unfit *ad pugnam* for fighting *propter ætatem* on ac-
 count of their age *in eum locum* into that place *quo*
 where *non esset* there was not *alitus* an approach
exercitui for an army *propter paludes* on account of
 marshes.

XVII. *His rebus cognitis* these things being known,
præmittit he sends forward *exploratores* spies *centuro-*

nesque and centurions *qui diligant* to choose *locum* a place *idoneum fit castris* for a camp. *Quumque* and since *complures* many *ex dediticiis Belgis* from the surrendered Belgæ *reliquisque Gallis* and the rest of the Gauls, *sequuti* having followed *Cæsarem* Cæsar, *facerent* were making *iter* the march *una* together with him : *quidam* some *ex his* of these, *ut as cognitum est* it was learnt *postea* afterwards *ex captivis* from the captives, *perspecta consuetudine* having observed the custom *itineris* of the march *nostri exercitus* of our army *eorum dierum* during those days, *pervenerunt* came *nocte* in the night *ad Nervios* to the Nervii *atque* and *demonstrarunt* showed *iis* to them *magnum numerum* that a great number *impedimentorum* of baggage [-equipages] *intercedere* intervened *inter singulas legiones* between the several legions, *neque esse* and that there was not *quidquam negotii* any difficulty, *quum* when *prima legio* the first legion *venisset* had come in *castra* to the camp *reliquæque legiones* and the other legions *abessent* were distant *magnum spatium* a great space, *adoriri* to attack *hanc* this *sub sarcinis* under their loads : *qua pulsa* which being beaten *impedimentisque direptis* and the baggage being seized, *futurum* that it would result *ut* that *reliquæ* the other [legions] *non auderent* would not dare *consistere* to stand their ground *contra* against them. *Adjuvabat* it aided *etiam* also *consilium* the design *eorum* of those *qui* who *deferebant* reported *rem* the circumstance, *quod* that *Nervii* the Nervii *antiquitus* of old *quum* since *nihil possent* they could do nothing *equitatu* in cavalry (*neque enim* for neither *ad hoc tempus* to this time *student* do they give attention *ei rei* to that matter, *sed* but *quidquid possunt* whatever their power is, *valent* they are strong *pedestribus copiis* in infantry) *quo* in order that *facilius impedirent* they might more easily resist *equitatum* the cavalry *finitimorum* of their neighbours, *si* if *venisset* it should come *ad eos* to them *causa* for the sake *prædandi* of plundering,

teneris arboribus with young trees *incisis* cut *atque* and *crebris ramis* the frequent branches *inflexis* being bent *in latitudinem* in a lateral direction, *et* and *rubis* briars *sentibusque* and thorns *interjectis* being placed between, *effecerant* had brought it to pass *ut* that *hæ sæpè* these hedges *præberent* furnished *munimenta* defences *instar muri* like a wall, *quo* whither *non modo* not only *posset intrari* could an entrance [not] be made, *sed* but *ne perspici quidem* [it could] not even be seen through. *Quum* whilst *iter* the march *agminis nostri* of our army *impediretur* was impeded *his rebus* by these things, *Nervii* the Nervii *æstimaverunt* thought *consilium* that their plan *non omittendum* ought not to be let slip *sibi* by them.

XVIII. *Natura* the nature *loci* of the place *quem* which *nostri* our men *deligerant* had chosen *locum* as a place *castris* for the camp, *erat hæc* was this. *Collis* a hill *declivis* sloping *æqualiter* equally *ab summo* from the top *vergebat* reached *ad flumen Sabim* to the river Sabis *quod* which *nominavimus* we have named *supra* above. *Ab eo flumine* from that river *collis* a hill *pari acclivitate* of like ascent *nascebatur* rose *adversus* opposite *huic* to this *et contrarius* and answering to it, *apertus* open *infima* as to its lowest parts, *passus circiter ducentos* for about two hundred paces, *silvestris* woody *ab superiore parte* from the higher part; *ut* so that *non posset* it could not *facile* easily *perspici* be seen *introrsus* inside. *Intra eas silvas* within these woods *hostes* the enemies *continebant sese* kept themselves *in occulto* in secret: *in aperto loco* in the open place *secundum flumen* along the stream *paucæ stationes* a few pickets *equitum* of cavalry *videbantur* were seen. *Altitudo* the depth *fluminis* of the river *erat* was *circiter trium pedum* about three feet.

XIX. *Cæsar* Cæsar, *equitatu præmisso* having sent forward his cavalry, *subsequebatur* followed *omnibus copiis* with all his forces; *sed* but *ratio* the form *ordoque* and order *agminis* of his line of march *habebat*

se aliter was otherwise *ac* than *Belyæ* the Belgæ *detulerant* had reported *ad Nervios* to the Nervii. *Nam* for, *quod* because *appropinquabat* he was approaching *ab hostes* to the enemy, *Cæsar* *Cæsar*, *consuetudine sua* according to his custom, *ducebat* was leading *sex legiones* six legions *expeditas* clear of baggage: *post eas* after these *collocarat* he had ranged *impedimenta* the baggage *totius exercitus* of the whole army: *inde* then *duæ legiones* two legions *quæ* which *conscriptæ erant* had been enrolled *proxime* most recently *claudabant* closed *totum agnem* the whole army, *erantque* and were *præsidio* as a guard *impedimentis* to the baggage. *Equites nostri* our cavalry, *cum funditoribus* with the slingers *sagittariisque* and the archers, *transgressi* having crossed *flumen* the river, *commiserunt* joined *prælium* battle *cum equitatu* with the cavalry *hostium* of the enemy. *Quum* when *illi* they *reciperent* withdrew *se* themselves *identidem* every now and then *ad suos* to their men *in silvas* into the woods, *ac* and *rursus* again *facerent* made *impetum* an attack *in nostros* on our men *ex silva* from the wood, *neque nostri auderent* and our men did not dare *insequi* to follow *cedentes* them retreating *longius* farther *quam* than *quem ad finem* the limit to which *porrecta* the outspread *ac aperta loca* and open places *pertinebant* reached; *interim* in the meanwhile *legiones sex* the six legions, *quæ* which *venerant* had come *primæ* first, *opere dimenso* having measured out the work, *cæperunt* began *munire* to fortify *castra* the camp. *Ubi* when *prima impedimenta* the first baggage *nostri exercitus* of our army *visa sunt* was seen *ab his* by those *qui* who *latebant* were lying *abditæ* hidden *in silvis* in the woods, (*quod tempus* which time *convenerat* had been agreed *inter eos* among themselves *committendi prælii* of giving battle) *ita* so *ut* as *constituerant* they had formed *aciem* their line *ordinesque* and ranks *intra silvas* in the woods, *atque* and *ipsi* themselves *confirmaverant* had strengthened *se* themselves, *subito* suddenly *provo-*

laverunt they rushed out *omnibus copiis* with all their forces *feceruntque* and made *impetum* an attack in *nostros equites* on our cavalry. *His pulsus* these being beaten *facile* easily *ac* and *proturbatis* being dispersed, *decucurrerunt* they ran down *incredibili celeritate* with incredible speed *ad flumen* to the river; *ut* so that *hostes* the enemies *viderentur* seemed *pæne* almost *uno tempore* at one time *et* both *ad silvas* at the woods *et* and in *flumine* in the river *et jam* and now in *nostris manibus* in close conflict with us: *eadem autem celeritate* but with the same speed *contenderunt* they marched *adverso colle* up the hill *ad nostra castra* to our camp, *atque eos* and to those *qui occupati erant* were occupied in *opere* in the work.

XX. *Omnia* all things *erant agenda* were to be done *Cæsari* by Cæsar *uno tempore* at one time: *vevillum* the standard *proponendum* was to be hung out, *quod* which *erat* was *insigne* the sign *quum* when *oporteret* it was necessary *concurri* that they should run *ad arma* to arms; *signum* the signal *dandum* to be given *tuba* by the trumpet; *milites* the soldiers *revocandi* to be recalled *ab opere* from the work; *qui* those who *processerant* had gone *paulo longius* a little farther *causa* for the sake *petendi aggeris* of seeking materials for the rampart, *arcessendi* to be fetched back: *acies* the line of battle *instruenda* to be drawn out, *milites* the soldiers *cohortandi* to be encouraged: *signum* the signal *dandum* to be given. *Magnam partem* a great part *quarum rerum* of which things *brevitas* the shortness *temporis* of time *et successus* and the coming up *et incursus* and the onset *hostium* of the enemy *impediebat* impeded. *His difficultatibus* to these difficulties *duæ res* two things *erant* were *subsidio* a remedy; *scientia* the skill *atque usus* and experience *militum* of the soldiers, *quod* because *exercitati* being experienced *superioribus præliis* in former battles, *ipsi poterant* they could *non minus commode* no less aptly *præscribere* suggest *sibi* to themselves *quid* what *oporteret* was ne-

cessary *fieri* to be done *quam* than *doceri* be taught *ab aliis* by others, *et* and *quod* because *Cæsar* *Cæsar* *vetuerat* had forbidden *singulos legatos* the several lieutenants *discedere* to depart *ab opere* from the work *singulisque legionibus* and their several legions *nisi* unless *munitis castris* after they had fortified the camp. *Hi* these *propter* on account of *propinquitatem* the nearness *et celeritatem* and quickness *hostium* of the enemy, *nihil jam spectabant* did not now wait for *imperium* the command *Cæsar* of *Cæsar*; *sed* but *per se* of themselves *administrabant* executed *quæ* what things *videbantur* seemed best.

XXI. *Cæsar* *Cæsar*, *necessariis rebus imperatis* having given the necessary commands, *decucurrit* ran down *ad cohortandos milites* to encourage the soldiers *in quam partem* into whatever part *fors* chance *obtulit* threw him, *et* and *devenit* arrived *ad decimam legionem* at the tenth legion. *Cohortatus* having exhorted *milites* the soldiers *non longiore oratione* by no longer speech *quam* than *uti* that *retinerent* they should retain *memoriam* the memory *pristinæ virtutis* of their former valour *neu perturbarentur* and not be agitated *animo* in their mind, *sustinerentque* and should sustain *fortiter* bravely *impetum* the attack *hostium* of the enemy, *quod* because *hostes* the enemy *non longius aberant* were not farther distant *quam* than *telum* a dart *posset* could *adjici* be thrown to, *dedit* he gave *signum* the signal *prælii committendi* of beginning the battle, *atque* and *profectus* setting out *in alteram partem* into another part *item* also *causa* for the cause *cohortandi* of exhorting them, *occurrit* he found them *pugnantibus* fighting. *Tanta* such *fuit* was *exiguitas* the shortness *temporis* of time *tamque* and so *paratus* bent *ad dimicandum* upon fighting *animus* was the mind *hostium* of the enemy, *ut* that *tempus* time *defuerit* was wanting *non modo* not only *ad insignia accommodanda* for arranging their insignia, *sed* but *etiam* even *ad galeas induendas* for putting on the helmets

detrahendaque and drawing off *tegimenta* the covering *scutis* from their shields. *In quam partem* on whatever part *quisque* each *devenit* arrived *ab opere* from the work *casu* by chance, *quæque signa* and whatever standards *conspexit* he saw *prima* first, *constitit* he stopped *ad hæc* at them, *ne* lest *demitteret* he should lose *tempus* the time *pugnandi* for fighting in *quærendis suis* in seeking for his own men. *

XXII. *Instructo exercitu* the army being drawn up *magis* rather *ut* as *natura* the nature *loci* of the place *dejectusque* and the declivity *collis* of the hill *et* and *necessitas* the shortness *temporis* of time, *quam* than *ut* as *ratio* the plan *atque ordo* and arrangement *militaris rei* of military affairs *postulabat* demanded, *quum* when *legiones* the legions *resisterent* were resisting *hostibus* the enemy *diversis locis* in different places *aliæ* each *in alia parte* in a different part, *prospectusque* and the view *impediretur* was obstructed *sepibus densissimis* by thick hedges *interjectis* that intervened *ut* as *ante demonstravimus* we have shown above, *neque* neither *poterant* could *certa subsidia* sure reserves *collocari* be placed, *neque* nor *quid* what *opus esset* should be the work *in quaque parte* in each part *provideri* be foreseen, *neque* nor *omnia imperia* all the orders *administrari* be discharged *ab uno* by one man. *Itaque* therefore *in tanta iniquitate* in such an unfavourable state *rerum* of things *varii eventus* various events *fortunæ quoque* of fortune also *sequebantur* followed.

XXIII. *Milites* the soldiers *non æ legionis* of the ninth legion *et decimæ* and of the tenth, *ut* as *constiterant* they had taken their post *in sinistra parte* on the left wing *acie* of the line, *pilis emissis* having hurled their javelins, *celeriter* rapidly *ex superiore loco* from higher ground *compulerant* drove *in flumen* into the river *Atrebates* the Atrebates (*nam* for *ea pars* that part of the battle *obvenerat* had fallen *his* to them) *exanimatos* breathless *cursu* with running *ac lassitudine* and fatigue,

confectosque and done up *vulneribus* with wounds; *et* and *insequuti* following them *gladiis* sword in hand *conantes* as they were trying *transire* to cross, *interfecerunt* they slew *magnam partem* a great part *eorum* of them *impeditam* disordered. *Ipsi* themselves *non dubitaverunt* did not hesitate *transire* to cross *flumen* the river, *et* and *progressi* having gone forward in *locum iniquum* into an unfavourable place, *rursus* again *reintegrato prælio* the battle having been renewed, *dederunt in fugam* turned to flight *hostes* the enemies *regressos* who had rallied *ac resistentes* and resisted. *Item* also *alia in parte* in another part *duæ legiones diversæ* two different legions, *undecima* the eleventh *et octava* and the eighth, *profligatis Veromanduis* having routed the Veromandui, *quibuscum* with whom *congressi erant* they had engaged, *præliabantur* were fighting *ex loco superiore* from higher ground in *ipsis ripis* on the very banks *fluminis* of the river. *At* but *tum* then *fere* almost *totis castris* the whole camp *nudatis* having been laid open *a fronte* in front *et* and *ab sinistra parte* on the left side, *quum* whereas *legio duodecima* the twelfth legion *et* and *non magno intervallo* at no great interval *ab ea* from it *septima* the seventh *constitisset* had taken its stand in *dextro cornu* on the right wing, *omnes Nervii* all the Nervii *confertissimo agmine* in a dense body *contenderunt* made their way *ad eum locum* to that place *duce Boduognato* under the lead of Boduognatus, *qui* who *tenebat* held *summam imperii* the command in chief: *quorum pars* part of whom *cæpit* began *circumvenire* to surround *legiones* the legions *aperto latere* on their open flank, *pars* part *petere* to make for *summum locum* the highest point *castrorum* of the camp.

XXIV. *Eodem tempore* at the same time *equites nostri* our horsemen *peditesque* and footmen *levis armaturæ* of light armour *qui* who *fuerant* had been *una* together *cum iis* with those *quos* whom *dixeram* I had named *vulsos* as having been repulsed *primo impetu* at the

first assault *hostium* of the enemy, *quum* when *reciperent se* they were withdrawing themselves in *castra* into the camp, *occurrebant met hostibus* the enemy *adversis face to face ac* and *rursus* again *petebant fugam* took to flight in *aliam partem* in another direction; *et* and *calones* the camp-followers, *qui* who *ab decumana porta* from the decuman gate *ac* and *summo jugo* the highest ridge *collis* of the hill *conspexerant* had seen *nostros* that our men *transisse* had crossed *flumen* the river *victores* victors, *egressi* having gone out *causa* for the sake *prædandi* of plundering, *quum* when *respexissent* they had looked back, *et* and *vidissent* had seen *hostes* that the enemy *versari* were busy in *nostris castris* in our camp, *mandabant sese* gave themselves up *præcipites* precipitately *fugæ* to flight. *Simul* at the same time *oriebatur* there arose *clamor* the cry *fremitusque* and shout *eorum* of those *qui* who *veniebant* were coming *cum impedimentis* with the baggage, *ferebantur que* and they were carried *perterriti* frightened *alii in aliam partem* each in a different direction. *Quibus omnibus rebus* by all which things *permoti* excited *Treviri equites* the cavalry of the Treviri, (*quorum virtutis* of whose valour *est* there is *opinio singularis* an extraordinary opinion *inter Gallos* among the Gauls, *qui* and who *venerant* had come *ad Cæsarem* to Cæsar *missi* sent *ab civitate* by their state *causa* for the sake *auxilii* of aid) *quum* when *vidissent* they had seen *castra nostra* our camp *compleri* filled *multitudine* with a multitude *hostium* of the enemy *legiones* the legions *premi* hard pressed *et* and *teneri* held *pæne* almost *circumventus* surrounded, *calones* the camp-followers, *equites* the cavalry, *funditores* the slingers, *Numidas* the Numidians, *diversos* scattered *dissipatosque* and divided *fugere* flying in *omnes partes* in all directions, *desperatis nostris rebus* giving up our cause in despair, *contenderunt domum* made their way home, *renunciaverunt* and reported *civitati* to their state *Romanos* that the Romans *pulsos* were beaten *superatosque* and

overcome, *hostes* that the enemy *potitos* were in possession of *castris eorum* their camp *impedimentisque* and baggage.

XXV. *Cæsar* *Cæsar profectus* proceeding *ab cohortatione* from the exhortation *decimæ legionis* of the tenth legion *ad dextrum eorum* to the right wing—*ubi* when *vidit* he saw *suos* that his own men *urgeri* were pressed, *signisque* and the standards *duodecimæ legionis* of the twelfth legion *collatis* being collected in *unum locum* into one place, *milites ipsos* that the soldiers themselves *confertos* crowded *esse* were *impedimento* an hindrance *sibi* to themselves *ad pugnam* to the fight: *omnibus centurionibus* all the centurions *quartæ cohortis* of the fourth cohort *occisis* having been cut to pieces *signiferoque* and the standard-bearer *interfecto* slain, *signo amisso* the standard having been lost, *fere* almost *omnibus centurionibus* all the centurions *reliquarum cohortium* of the other cohorts *aut* either *vulneratis* having been wounded *aut* or *occisis* slain, *in his* among these *primopilo* the chief centurion, *Publio Sextio Baculo* Publius Sextius Baculus, *fortissimo viro* a very brave man, *confecto* being done up *multis* with many *gravibusque vulneribus* and severe wounds, *ut* so that *jam* already *non posset* he could not *sustinere* *se* support himself, *reliquos* that the others *esse* were *tardiores* more tardy: *et* and *nonnullos* that some *desertos* deserted *ab novissimis* by the rear *excedere* were retreating *prælio* from the battle *et* and *vitare* were avoiding *tela* the weapons: *hostes* that the enemy *subeuntes* coming up *ex inferiore loco* from the lower ground *neque intermittere* were neither relaxing *a fronte* in the front *et* and *instare* were pressing on *ab utroque latere* on both flanks: *et* and *rem* that the affair *esse* was in *angusto* at a crisis, *neque esse* and that there was not *ullum subsidium* any reserve *quod* which *posset* could *submitti* be sent up: *scuto detracto* having snatched a shield *uni militi* from a soldier *ab novissimis* of the rearmost, *quod* because *ipse* himself *venerat*

had come *eo thither sine scuto* without a shield—*processit* went *in primam aciem* into the first line, *centurionibusque appellatis* and having called the centurions *nominatim* by name, *cohortatus* exhorting *reliquos milites* the other soldiers, *jussit* he ordered them *inferre* to advance *signa* the standards *et* and *laxare* to extend *manipulos* the companies, *quo* by which *possent* they might be able *uti* to use *gladiis* their swords *facilius* more easily. *Cujus adventu* by whose arrival *spe* hope *illata* being inspired *militibus* into the soldiers, *ac* and *animo* their courage *redintegrato* being revived, *quum* since *cuperent* they desired *quisque* each one *pro se* for himself *navare operam* to signalise his bravery *in conspectu* in the sight *imperatoris* of his general, *etiam* and also *in extremis suis rebus* at the extreme crisis of their fate, *impetus* the impetuosity *hostium* of the enemy *paullum tardatus est* was a little checked.

XXVI. *Cæsar* Cæsar, *quum* when *vidisset* he had seen *septimam legionem* that the seventh legion, *quæ* which *constiterat* had taken its post *juxta* near him, *item urgeri* was also pressed *ab hoste* by the enemy, *monuit* advised *tribunos* the tribunes *militum* of the soldiers, *ut* that *legiones* the legions *conjungerent* should join *sese* themselves *paullatim* gradually, *et* and *inferrent* advance *signa* their standards *conversa* turned *in hostes* against the enemy. *Quo facto* which being done, *quum* when *ferrent* they were bringing *subsidium* aid *alii aliis* one to another, *neque timerent* and feared not *ne* lest *aversi* turned away *circumvenirentur* they should be surrounded *ab hoste* by the enemy, *cæperunt* they began *resistere* to resist *audacius* more boldly *ac* and *pugnare* to fight *fortius* more bravely. *Interim* in the meanwhile *milites* the soldiers *legionarum duarum* of the two legions *quæ* which *fuerant* had been *in novissimo agmine* in the rear line *præsidio* as a guard *impedimentis* to the baggage, *prælio nunciato* when the battle was reported to them, *cursu incitato* quickening their speed, *conspiciebantur* were seen *in summo*

colle on the top of the hill *ab hostibus* by the enemy. *Et* and *Titus Labienus* Titus Labienus, *potitus* having gained *castris* the camp *hostium* of the enemy, *et* and *ex loco superiore* from the higher ground *conspicatus* having seen *quæ res* what things *gererentur* were being done in *nostris castris* in our camp, *misit* sent *decimam legionem* the tenth legion *subsidio* as a relief *nostris* to our men. *Qui* who *quum* when *cognovissent* they had learnt *ex fuga* from the flight *equitum* of the cavalry *et* and *calonum* of the camp-followers, *quo in loco* in what position *res* the affair *esset* was, *quantoque in periculo* and in how great peril *et* both *castra* the camp *et* and *legiones* the legions *et* and *imperator* the general *versaretur* were involved, *fecerunt nihil reliqui* caused nothing to be left undone *sibi* for themselves *ad celeritatem* on the score of speed.

XXVII. *Adventu* by the coming *horum* of these *tanta commutatio* so great a change *rerum* of affairs *facta est* was made, *ut* that *nostri* our men, *etiam* even *qui* those who *procubuissent* had fallen down *confecti* exhausted *vulneribus* with wounds, *innixi* leaning *scutis* on their shields, *redintegrarent* renewed *prælium* the battle: *tum* then *calones* the camp-followers *conspicati* having seen *hostes* the enemy *perterritos* frightened, *occurrerent* ran *etiam* even *inermes* unarmed *armatis* against them armed: *equites vero* but the cavalry, *ut* that *virtute* by valour *deleterent* they might blot out *turpitudinem* the disgrace *fugæ* of flight, *præferrent se* thrust themselves before *legionariis militibus* the legionary soldiers *omnibus in locis* in all places *pugnæ* of the battle. *At* but *hostes* the enemy *etiam* even in *extrema spe* in the last hope *salutis* of safety *præstiterunt* displayed *tantam virtutem* so great valour *ut* that, *quum* when *primi* the first *eorum* of them *cecidissent* had fallen, *proximi* the next *insisterent* stood over *jacentibus* them prostrate *atque* and *pugnarent* fought *ex eorum corporibus* from their bodies: *his dejectis* when these were overthrown *et* and *cadaveribus* their bodies *conservatis* were heaped

up together, *qui* those who *superessent* survived *acerent* cast *tela* their weapons *in nostros* against our men *et* and *remitterent* threw back *pila* their darts *intercepta* intercepted, *ut* as *ex tumulo* from a mound: *ut* so that *non deberet* it ought not *judicari* to be judged *homines* that men *tantæ virtutis* of so great valour *ausos esse* had dared *transire* to cross *latissimum flumen* a very wide river *nequidquam* in vain, *ascendere* to ascend *altissimas ripas* its very high banks, *subire* to advance against *iniquissimam locum* a most disadvantageous place: *quæ* which things *magnitudo* their greatness *animi* of spirit *redegerat* had rendered *facilia* easy *ex difficillimis* from most difficult.

XXVIII. *Hoc prælio* this battle *facto* having been fought, *et* and *gente* the nation *ac* and *prope* almost *nomine* the name *Nerviorum* of the Nervii *reducto* being reduced *ad internecionem* to annihilation, *majores natu* their elders *quos* whom *una* together *cum pueris* with the boys *mulieribusque* and the women *dixeramus* we had mentioned *collectos* as collected *in æstuaria* into the fens *ac* and *paludes* the marshes, *hac pugna* this battle *nunciata* being told, *quum* since *arbitrarentur* they thought *nihil* that nothing *impeditum* was an obstacle *victoribus* to the victors, *nihil* nothing *tutum* safe *victis* for the conquered, *miserunt* sent *legatos* ambassadors *ad Cæsarem* to Cæsar *consensu* by the consent *omnium* of all *qui* who *supererant* remained *dedideruntque* and surrendered *se* themselves *ei* to him, *et* and *in commemoranda calamitate* in relating the calamity *civitatis* of their state *dixerunt* said *sese* that they *reductos esse* had been brought down *senatores* senators *ex sexcentis* from six hundred *ad tres* to three, *ex sexaginta millibus* from sixty thousand *hominum* men *vix ad quingentos* to scarcely five hundred *qui* who *possent* could *arma ferre* bear arms. *Quos* whom Cæsar Cæsar, *ut videretur* that he might seem *usus* to have used *miseriordia* pity *in miseros* towards the wretched *ac supplices* and the suppliant, *conser-*

vavit spared *diligentissime* most carefully, *jussitque* and ordered them *uti* to enjoy *suis finibus* their territories *atque oppidis* and towns, *et* and *imperavit* commanded *finitimis* their neighbouring states *ut prohiberent* to restrain *se* themselves *suosque* and their own men *ab injuria* from injury *et maleficio* and outrage [towards them].

XXIX. *Aduatuci* the Aduatuci, *de quibus* concerning whom *scripsimus* we have written *supra* above, *quum* when *venirent* they were coming *omnibus copiis* with all their forces *auxilio* as an aid *Nerviis* to the Nervii, *hac pugna* this battle *nunciata* being told, *reverterunt* returned *ex itinere* from their march *domum* home, *cunctis oppidis* all their towns *castellisque* and forts *desertis* being deserted; *contulerunt* they conveyed *sua omnia* all their goods *in unum oppidum* into one town *munitum* fortified *egregie* eminently *natura* by nature. *Quod* which *quum* when *haberet* it had *ex omnibus partibus* on all parts *in circuitu* in its circuit *altissimas rupes* very high cliffs *despectusque* and precipices, *una ex parte* on one side *aditus* an approach *leniter acclivis* gently sloping *relinquebatur* was left *in latitudinem* to the breadth *ducentorum pedum* of two hundred feet *non amplius* not more: *quem locum* which place *munerant* they had fortified *altissimo duplici muro* with a very lofty double wall, *tum* then *collocarant* they had collected *saxa* stones *magni ponderis* of great weight *et præacutas trabes* sharpened stakes *in muro* on the wall. *Ipsi* themselves *erant* were *prognati* sprung *ex Cimbris* from the Cimbri *Teutonisque* and the Teutoni: *qui* who, *quum* when *facerent* they were making *iter* a journey *in nostram provinciam* into our province *atque Italiam* and Italy, *iis impedimentis* that part of the baggage *quæ* which *non poterant* they could not *agere* drive *ac portare* and carry *secum* with them *depositis* having been deposited *citra flumen Rhenum* beyond the river Rhine, *reliquerunt* left *sex millia hominum* six thousand men *ex suis* of their own

una with it *custodiæ* as a defence *acpræsidio* and guard. *Hi* these *post obitum eorum* after their destruction *exagitati* having been harassed *multos annos* many years *a finitimis* by their neighbours, *quum* whilst *alias* at one time *bellum inferrent* they waged war, *alias* at another *defenderent* repelled it *illatum* waged against them, *pax* peace *facta* being made *consensu* by the consent *eorum omnium* of all of them, *delegerunt* chose *hunc locum* this place *domicilio* as a settlement *sibi* for themselves.

XXX. *Acand primo adventu* on the first arrival *exercitus nostri* of our army *faciebant* they made *crebras excursiones* frequent sallies *ex oppido* from the town, *contendebantque* and contended *cum nostris* with our men *parvulis præliis* in small skirmishes: *postea* afterwards *circummuniti* when hemmed in *vallo* by a rampart *pedum duodecim* of twelve feet, *quindecim millium* fifteen miles *in circuitu* in circuit, *crebrisque castellis* and numerous towers, *continebant* they kept *sese* themselves *oppido* in the town. *Ubi* when *vineis actis* the mantlets having been brought up, *aggere exstructo* and a mound constructed, *viderunt* they saw *turrim* that a tower *constitui* was being made *procul* at a distance, *primum* first *irridere* they began to mock *ex muro* from the wall *atque* and *increpitare* to taunt them *vocibus* with words, " *Quo* for what purpose *tanta machinatio* was so great a machine *institueretur* being constructed *ab tanto spatio* at so great a distance? " " *Quibusnam manibus* with what hands *aut* or *quibus viribus* with what strength, *præsertim* especially *homines* being men *tantulæ staturæ* of so little stature " (*nam* for *veritas nostra* our shortness of stature *est* is *plerumque* for the most part *contemptui* a subject of contempt *Gallis hominibus* to the men of Gaul *præ magnitudine* compared with the size *corporum suorum* of their own bodies), " *confiderent* did they trust *sese* that they *collocare* could place *turrim* a tower *tanti oneris* of so great weight *in muros* against the walls? "

XXXI. *Ubi vero* but when *viderunt* they saw it *movere* to move *et* and *appropinquare* approach *mœnibus* the walls, *commoti* startled *nova* by the new *atque* and *inuitata specie* unaccustomed sight, *miserrunt* they sent *ad Cæsarem* to Cæsar *legatos* ambassadors *de pace* concerning peace, *qui* who *loquuti* spoke *ad hunc modum* in this manner: "*Se* that they *non existimare* did not think *Romanos* that the Romans *gerere bellum* waged war *sine opē divina* without divine aid, *qui* who *possent* were able *promovere* to move forward *machinationes* machines *tantæ altitu linis* of such great height *tanta celeritate* with so great speed *et* and *pugnare* fight *ex propinquitate* from close quarters: *dixerunt* they said *se* that they *permittere* gave up *se* themselves *suaque omnia* and all their goods *eorum potestati* to their power. *Petere* that they begged *ac deprecari* and entreated *unum* one thing: *si* if *forte* by chance, *pro sua clementia* according to his clemency *ac mansuetudine* and humanity, *quam* which *ipsi* they *audirent* heard *ab aliis* from others, *statuisset* he should have resolved *Aduatucos* that the *Aduatuciesse conservandos* were to be spared, *ne despoliaret* not to deprive *se* them *armis* of their arms: *fere omnes finitimos* that almost all their neighbours *esse inimicos* were enemies *sibi* to them. *ac* and *invidere* envied *sua virtuti* their valour: *a quibus* from which *non possent* they could not *defendere se* defend themselves *traditis armis* if their arms were given up. *Præstare* that it was better *sibi* for them, *si* if *deducerentur* they should be reduced *in eum casum* to that state, *pati* to suffer *quamvis fortunam* any fate *a populo Romano* from the Roman people *quam* than *interfici* to be slain *per cruciatum* with torture *ab his* by those *inter quos* among whom *consuessent* they had been accustomed *dominari* to rule."

XXXII. *Ad hæc* to these [words] *Cæsar* Cæsar *respondit* answered, *Se* that he *magis* rather *consuetudine sua* from his own habit *quam* than *merito eorum* from their merit, *conservaturum* would save *civitatem* the city *si*

if *dedidissent* they should have surrendered *se* themselves *prius quam* before that *aries* the ram *attigisset* should have touched *murum* the wall: *sed* but *esse* that there should be *nullam conditionem* no terms *deditionis* of capitulation *nisi* except *armis traditis* their arms being given up: *se* that he *facturum* would do *id* the same *quod* which *fecisset* he had done in *Nerviis* in the case of the *Nervii*, *imperaturumque* and would give orders *finitimis* to the neighbouring [tribes], *ne inferrent* not to inflict *quam injuriam* any injury *dedititiis* on the subjects *populi Romani* of the Roman people. *Re nunciata* the thing being reported *ad suos* to their countrymen, *dixerunt* they said *facere* that they would do *quæ* whatever things *imperarentur* they were ordered. *Magna multitudo* a great quantity *armorum* of arms *jactu* having been thrown *de muro* from the wall *in fossam* into the ditch *quæ* which *erat* was *ante oppidum* before the town, *sic* so *ut* that *acervi* the heaps *armorum* of arms *prope* almost *adæquarent* equalled *summam altitudinem* the greatest height *muri* of the wall *aggerisque* and of the mound, *et tamen* and yet *tertia parte* the third part *circiter* near about, *ut* as *postea* afterwards *perspectum est* was discovered, *celata* having been concealed *atque* and *retenta* retained in *oppido* in the town, *portis* the gates *patefactis* having been thrown open, *usi sunt* they enjoyed *pace* peace *eo die* on that day.

XXXIII. *Sub vesperum* towards evening *Cæsar* *Cæsar* *jussit* ordered *portas* the gates *claudi* to be shut, *militesque* and the soldiers *exire* to go out *ex oppido* from the town, *ne* lest *oppidani* the townsmen *acciperent* should receive *quam injuriam* any injury *noctu* in the night *ab militibus* from the soldiers. *Illi* they *inito consilio* having entered into a plot *ante* beforehand, *ut* as *intellectum est* it was perceived, *quod* because *crediderant* they had believed *deditione facta* that if a capitulation was made *nostros* our men *deducturos* would draw off *præsidia* the garrison *aut* or

denique at length *servaturos* would keep them *indiligentius* less diligently, *partim* some of them *cum his armis* with those arms *quæ* which *retinuerant* they had kept *et celaverant* and had hidden, *partim* partly *scutis* with shields *factis* made *ex cortice* of bark *aut* or *viminibus intextis* of wattled twigs, *quæ* which *induxerant* they had covered *subito* on a sudden *pellibus* with skins, *ut* as *exeguitas* the shortness *temporis* of time *postulabat* demanded, *tertia vigilia* in the third watch *qua* where *ascensus* the ascent *videbatur* appeared *minime arduus* least steep *ad nostras munitiones* to our fortifications, *fecerunt* made *eruptionem* a sally *repente* on a sudden *omnibus copiis* with all their forces *ex oppido* out of the town. *Celeriter* with speed, *ut* as *Cæsar Cæsar imperarat* had given orders *ante* before, *significatione* intimation *facta* having been made *ignibus* by fires, *concursum est* a concourse was made *eo* to that point *ex proximis castellis* from the nearest forts, *pugnatumque* and the battle was fought *ab hostibus* by the enemy *ita acriter* as fiercely *ut* as *debit* it was fit *pugnari* for a battle to be fought *a viris fortibus* by brave men *in extrema spe* in the last hope *salutis* of safety, *iniquo loco* on unfavourable ground *contra eos* against those *qui* who *jacerent* were casting *tela* their weapons *ex valle* from a rampart *turribusque* and towers, *quum* seeing that *omnis spes* all hope *salutis* of safety *consisteret* consisted *in una virtute* in valour alone. *Ad quatuor millia hominum* as many as four thousand men *occisis* having been slain, *reliqui* the rest *rejecti sunt* were thrown back *in oppidum* into the town. *Postridie* on the morrow *ejus diei* of that day, *refractis portis* the gates having been burst open, *quum* when *jam* now *nemo* no one *defenderet* was defending it, *atque* and *militibus nostris* our soldiers *intromissit* having been let in, *Cæsar Cæsar vendidit* sold *universam sectionem* the whole lot *ejus oppidi* of that town. *Ab his* by those *qui* who *emerant* had bought, *numerus* the number *capitum* of persons *relatus*

est was reported *ad eum* to him *millium trium et quinquaginta* at fifty-three thousand.

XXXIV. *Eodem tempore* at the same time *factus est certior* he was informed *a Publio Crasso* by Publius Crassus, *quem* whom *miserat* he had sent *cum una legione* with one legion *ad Venetos* to the Veneti, *Unellos* the Unelli; *Osismios* the Osismii, *Ouriosolitas* the Curiosolitæ, *Sesuvios* the Sesuvii, *Aulercos* the Aulerci, *Rhedones* and the Rhedones, *quæ* which *sunt* are *maritimæ civitates* maritime states, *adtinguntque* and touch on *oceanum* the ocean, *omnes eas civitates* that all those states *redactas esse* were reduced in *ditionem* under the sway *potestatemque* and power *populi Romani* of the Roman people.

XXXV. *His rebus gestis* these achievements done, *omni Gallia pacata* and all Gaul pacified, *tanto opinio* so high an opinion *hujus belli* of this war *perlata est* was carried *ad barbaros* to the barbarians *uti* that *legati* ambassadors *mitterentur* were sent *ad Cæsarem* to Cæsar *ab his nationibus* from those nations *quæ* which *incolerent* dwelt *trans Rhenum* beyond the Rhine, *quæ* which *pollicerentur* promised *se* that they *daturas* would give *obsides* hostages, *facturas* and would do *imperata* the things commanded them: *quas legationes* which embassies Cæsar Cæsar, *quod* because *properabat* he was hastening in *Italiam* into Italy *Illyricumque* and Illyricum, *jussit* ordered *reverti* to come back *ad se* to him *inita proxima æstate* at the beginning of the next summer. *Ipsæ* himself *deductis legionibus* having led his legions in *hibernis* for winter quarters in *Carnutes* among the Carnutes, *Andes* the Andea, *Turonesque* and the Turones, *quæ civitates* which cities *erant* were *propinquæ* near *his locis* to those places *ubi* where *gesserat* he had carried on *bellum* the war, *profectus est* set out in *Italiam* into Italy, *ob easque res* and for those exploits, *ex literis* from the letters *Cæsaris* of Cæsar, *supplicatio* a thanksgiving *dies quindecim* during fifteen days *decreta est* was decreed; *quod*

which [honour] *accidit* happened *nulli* to no one *ante id tempus* before that time.

Book III.

I. *Quum* when *Cæsar Cæsar proficisceretur* was setting out in *Italiam* into Italy, *misit* he sent *Servium Galbam* *Servius Galba cum legione duodecima* with the twelfth legion *et* and *parte* part *equitatus* of the cavalry in *Nantuates* to the Nantuates, *Veragros* the *Veragri Sedunosque* and the *Seduni qui* who *pertinent* stretch *ab finibus* from the frontiers *Allobrogum* of the *Allobroges*, *et* and *lacu Lemanno* the lake *Leman*, *et* and *flumine Rhodano* from the river *Rhone ad summas Alpes* to the tops of the Alps. *Causa* the cause *mittendi* of sending *fuit* was, *quod* because *volebat* he wished *iter* that the way *per Alpes* through the Alps *patefieri* should be laid open, *quo* by which *mercatores* the merchants *consuerant* had been accustomed *ire* to go *magno cum periculo* with great danger *magnisque cum portoriis* and by paying heavy tolls. *Permisit* he gave commission *huic* to him, *si* if *arbitraretur* he should think *opus esse* that there was need, *uti* that *collocaret* he should station *legionem* the legion in *eis locis* in those places *causa* for the sake *hiemandi* of wintering. *Galba Galba, factis aliquot secundis præliis* having fought some favourable battles, *expugnatisque compluribus eorum castellis* and having taken many of their fortresses, *missis legatis* when ambassadors had been sent *ad eum* to him *undique* from every side *obsidibusque datis* and hostages given *et pace facta* and peace made, *constituit* resolved *collocare* to station *duas cohortes* two cohorts in *Nantuatibus* among the Nantuates, *et ipse* and himself *hiemare* to winter *cum reliquis cohortibus* with the rest of the cohorts *eius legionis* of that legion *in vico* in the town *Veragrorum*

of the Veragri *qui* which *appellatur* is called *Octodurus* *Octodurus*; *qui vicus* which town, *positus* placed in *valle* in a valley, *planicie* with a plain *non magna* not very great *adjecta* adjoining it, *continetur* is inclosed *undique* on every side *altissimis montibus* by high mountains. *Quum* since *hic* this [town] *divideretur* was divided in *duas partes* into two parts *flumine* by the river, *concessit* he gave over *alteram partem* one part *ejus vici* of that town *Gallis* to the Gauls, *alteram* the other, *relictam* which had been left *vacuam* empty *ab illis* by them, *attribuit* he assigned *cohortibus* to the cohorts *ad hibernandum* for wintering in. *Munivit* he fortified *eum locum* that place *vallo* by a rampart *fossaque* and a ditch.

II. *Quum* when *complures dies* many days *hibernorum* of winter quarters *transissent* had passed, *jussissetque* and he had ordered *frumentum* the corn *comportari* to be brought together *eo* thither, *subito* suddenly *certior factus est* he was informed *per exploratores* by spies *omnes* that all *discessisse* had departed *noctu* by night *ex ea parte* from that part *vici* of the town *quam* which *concesserat* he had given up *Gallis* to the Gauls, *montesque* and that the mountains *qui* which *impenderent* hung over *teneri* were held *a maximâ multitudine* by an immense number *Sedunorum* of the Seduni *et Veragrorum* and of the Veragri. *Id* that *acciderat* had happened *aliquot de causis* for many causes, *ut* that *Galli* the Gauls *subito* suddenly *consilium caperent* entertained the thought *belli renovandi* of renewing the war *legionisque opprimendæ* and of crushing the legion: *primum* first, *quod* because *propter paucitatem* of its small number, *despiciebant* they despised *legionem* the legion, *neque eam plenissimam* and that not fully complete, *cohortibus duabus* two cohorts *detractis* having been taken away *et* and *compluribus* many *singulatim* singly *absentibus* being absent, *qui* who *missi erant* had been sent *causa* for the sake *commeatus petendi* of seeking provision; *tum etiam* then

also, *quod* because *propter* on account of *iniquitatem* the unfavourable nature *loci* of the place *existimabant* they thought *quum* that whereas *ipsi* themselves *decurrerent* ran down *et* and *conjicerent* threw *tela* their weapons *ex montibus* from the mountains *in vallem* into the valley, *ne primum quidem impetum suum* not even their first attack *posse* could *sustineri* be sustained. *Accedebat* there was added to this *quod* that *dolebant* they grieved *suos liberos* that their children *abstractos* were taken away *ab se* from them *nomine* under the name *obsidum* of hostages; *et* and *habebant* they had it *sibi persuasum* fixed in their minds *Romanos* that the Romans *non solum* not only *causa* for the purpose *itinerum* of roads, *sed* but *etiam* also *perpetua possessionis* of perpetual possession, *conari* were endeavouring *occupare* to seize *culmina* the tops *Alpium* of the Alps *et* and *adjungere* to join *ea loca* those places *finitimæ provinciæ* to the neighbouring province.

III. *His nunciis acceptis* these messengers being received *Galba* Galba, *quum* when *neque* neither *opus* the work *hibernorum* of winter quarters *munitionesque* and the fortifications *plene essent perfectæ* were wholly perfected, *neque satis* nor enough *de frumento* of corn *reliquoque commeatu* and other provision *esset provisum* had been provided, *quod* because, *deditione facta* a surrender being made *obsidibusque acceptis* and hostages received, *existimaverat* he had thought *nihil timendum* that no fear need be *de bello* of war, *celeriter* quickly *concilio convocato* having called a council, *cæpit* began *exquirere* to find out *sententias* their opinions. *Quo in concilio* in which council, *quum* when *tantum* so much *repentini periculi* of sudden danger *accidisset* had happened *præter opinionem* contrary to expectation, *ac* and *jam* already *loca superiora* the higher places *conspicerentur* were seen *completa* filled *multitudine* with a multitude *armatorum* of armed men, *neque veniri* [*posset*] and that it was neither possible to come *subsidio* to help, *neque* nor

commeatus possent could the supplies *supportari* be brought up, *interclusis itineribus* as the roads were cut off; *salute* safety *jam desperata* being already despaired of, *nonnullæ sententiæ* some opinions *dicebantur* were spoken *hujusmodi* of this nature *ut* that *impedimentis relictis* having left their baggage, *eruptione facta* making a rush, *contenderent* they should march *ad salutem* to safety *iisdem itineribus* by the same roads *quibus* by which *pervenissent* they had come *eo* thither. *Tamen* yet *placuit* it pleased *majori parti* the greater part, *hoc consilio reservato* reserving this plan *ad extremum* for extremities *interim* in the meanwhile *experiri* to try *eventum* the issue *rei* of the affair *et* and *defendere* to defend *castra* the camp.

IV. *Brevi spatio* a short space of time *interjecto* intervening *ut* so that *vix* scarcely *tempus* time *daretur* was given *collocandis* for arranging *atque administrandis* and for executing *his rebus* those things *quas* which *constituissent* they had resolved, *hostes* the enemies. *signo dato* on a given signal, *decurrere* began to run down *ex omnibus partibus* from all parts, *conjicere* to throw *lapides* stones *gæsaque* and javelins *in vacuum* against the rampart. *Nostri* our men *primo* in the first place, *integrus viribus* whilst their strength was fresh, *repugnare* began to resist *fortiter* bravely *neque mittere* and not to throw *ullum telum* any weapon *ex loco superiore* from the higher ground *frustra* without effect; *ut* so as *quæque pars* any part *castrorum* of the camp *videbatur* seemed *premi* to be pressed *nudata* being bared *defensoribus* of defenders, *eo* thither *occurrere* to run *et* and *ferre auxilium* to carry aid; *sed* but *superari* they were overcome *hoc* by this, *quod* that *hostes* the enemies, *defessi* wearied *diuturnitate* by the length *pugnæ* of the fight, *excedebant* began to withdraw *prælio* from the battle, *alii* others *succedebant* succeeded *integrus viribus* with fresh strength, *quarum rerum* of which things *nihil* none *poterat fieri* could be done *a nostris* by our men *propter*

paucitatem on account of their fewness; *ac* and *non modo* not only *facultas* [no] mode *dabatur* was given *defesso* to him who was wearied *excedendi* of withdrawing *ex pugna* from the fight, *sed* but *ne saucio quidem* not even to a wounded man *relinquendi* of leaving *eius loci* that place *ubi* where *constiterat* he had stood, *ac* and *sui recipiendi* of getting himself away.

V. *Quum* when *jam* already *pugnaretur* it had been fought *amplius sex horis* for more than six hours *continenter* unceasingly, *ac* and *non solum* not only *vires* strength *sed* but *etiam* also *tela* weapons *deficerent* were beginning to fail *nostris* to our men, *atque* and *hostes* the enemies *instarent* were pressing on *acrius* more fiercely, *cœpissentque* and had begun *scindere* to break through *vallum* the rampart *et* and *complere* to fill up *fossas* the ditches *nostris* whilst our men *languidioribus* became weaker, *resque* and the affair *jam* already *perducta esset* had been brought *ad extremum casum* to the extremity of hazard, *Publius Sextius Baculus* Publius Sextius Baculus, *centurio* a centurion *primipili* of the first rank, *quem* whom *diximus* we stated *confectum* to have been done up *compluribus vulneribus* with numerous wounds *Nervico prælio* in the battle with the Nervii, *et item* and also *Caius Volusenus* Caius Volusenus, *tribunus* a tribune *militum* of the soldiers, *vir* a man *et* both *consilii magni* of great talent *et* and *virtutis* valour, *accurrunt* run up *ad Galbam* to Galba, *atque* and *docent* inform him *esse* that there is *unam spem* one only hope *salutis* of safety *si* if, *eruptione facta* making a sally, *experirentur* they should try *extremum auxilium* the last resource. *Itaque* and so *convocatis centurionibus* the centurions being called together, *facit certiores* he informs *milites* the soldiers *celeriter* with all speed, *intermitterent* that they should relax *prælium* the fight *paulisper* awhile, *ac* and *tantummodo* only *exciperent* receive *tela* the weapons *missa* that were hurled against them *reficerentque* and recruit *se* themselves *ex labore* from labour:

post and afterwards *dato signo* on a signal being given *erumperent* they should break forth *ex castris* from the camp *atque* and *ponerent* place *omnem spem* all hope *salutis* of safety *in virtute* in their valour.

VI. *Quod* what *jussi sunt* they were ordered *faciunt* they do, *ac* and *subito* suddenly *eruptione facta* making a sally *omnibus portis* from all the gates, *relinquunt* they leave *hostibus* to the enemies *facultatem* the power *neque* neither *cognoscendi* of knowing *quid fieret* what was going on *neque* nor *sui colligendi* of concentrating themselves. *Ita* thus *commutata fortuna* fortune changing, *interficiunt* they slay *eos* those *qui* who *venerant* had come *in spem* to the hope *potiundorum castrorum* of gaining the camp, *circumventos* being surrounded *undique* on every side, *et* and *ex millibus amplius triginta* out of more than thirty thousand *hominum* of men, *quem numerum* which number *barbarorum* of barbarians *constabat* it was ascertained *venisse* had come *ad castra* to the camp, *plus* more *tertiæ parte* than the third part *interfecta* having been slain, *conjiciunt* they throw back *reliquos* the rest *perterritos* thoroughly frightened *in fugam* to flight *ac* and *patiuntur* suffer them *consistere* to rally *ne in locis quidem superioribus* not even in the higher grounds. *Sic* thus *omnibus copiis* all the forces *hostium* of the enemies *fusis* having been put to flight *armisque exutis* and their arms taken from them, *recipiunt se* they withdraw themselves *in castra* into the camp *munitionesque suas* and their fortifications. *Quo prælio facto* which battle having been fought, *quod* because *Galba* Galba *nolebat* was unwilling *tentare* to try *fortunam* fortune *sæpius* any more *atque* and *meminerat* remembered *sese* that he *venisse* had come *in hiberna* to winter quarters *alio consilio* for one purpose, *viderat* [but] saw *occurrisse* that he had chanced upon *aliis rebus* another state of things, *maxime permotus* being very much disturbed *inopia* by the want *frumenti* of corn *commeatusque* and provision, *posteri die* on the next

day *omnibus ædificiis incensis* having burnt all the buildings *ejus vici* of that town, *contendit* he sets out *reverti* to return in *provinciam* into the province: *ac* and *nullo hoste* no enemy *prohibente* preventing *aut* or *demorante* delaying *iter* the journey *perduxit* he led *legionem* the legion *incolumem* safe in *Nantuates* to the Nantuates, *inde* and thence in *Allobrogas* to the Allobroges; *ibique* and there *hiemavit* he passed the winter.

VII. *His rebus gestis* these things having been done, *quum* whereas *Cæsar* *Cæsar existimaret* imagined *omnibus de causis* for every reason *Galliam* that Gaul *pacatam* was tranquillized, *superatis Belgis* the Belgæ having been overcome, *expulsis Germanis* and the Germans driven out, *victis Sedunis* the Seduni being conquered in *Alpibus* in the Alps, *atque ita* and thus *inita hieme* when the winter began, *profectus esset* had set out in *Illyricum* to Illyricum, *quod* because *volebat* he wished *adire* to visit *eas quoque nationes* those nations also *et* and *cognoscere* to know *regiones* the countries; *subitum bellum* a sudden war *coortum est* arose in *Gallia* in Gaul. *Causa* the cause *ejus belli* of this war *fuit* was *hæc* this, *Publius Crassus* *Publius Crassus*, *adolescens* a young man, *cum legione septima* with the seventh legion *hiemarat* had wintered in *Andibus* in Andes, *proximus* nearest *mare Oceanum* the ocean sea. *Is* he, *quod* because *erat* there was *inopia* a want *frumenti* of corn in *his locis* in these parts, *dimisit* dismissed *complures præfectos* several præfects *tribunosque* and tribunes *militum* of soldiers in *finitimas civitates* into the neighbouring states *causa* for the sake *petendi frumenti* of seeking corn *commeatusque* and provision, *quo in numero* in which number *erat* was *Titus Terrasidius* *Titus Terrasidius* *missus* sent in *Unellos* to the Unelli; *Marcus Trebius Gallus* *Marcus Trebius Gallus*, in *Curiosolitas* to the Curiosolites; *Quintus Velanius* *Quintus Velanius* *cum Tito Silio* with *Titus Silius*, in *Venetos* to the Veneti.

VIII. *Auctoritas* the influence *hujus civitatis* of this state *est* is *longe* by far *amplissima* the most considerable *omnis oræ maritimæ* of all the sea-coast *regionum earum* of those regions; *quod* because *Veneti* the Veneti *et* both *habent* have *plurimas naves* the most ships, *quibus* by which *consuerunt* they have been accustomed *navigare* to sail in *Britanniam* to Britain, *et* and *antedunt* excel *reliquos* the rest *scientia* in science *atque* and *usu* in experience *rerum nauticarum* of naval affairs, *et* and, in *magno* in the great *atque aperto impetu* and open swell *maris* of the sea, *paucis portibus* a few ports *interjectis* intervening, *quos* which *ipsi* they themselves *tenent* hold: *habent* they have *vectigales* as tributaries *fere omnes* almost all *qui* who *consuerunt* have been accustomed *uti* to use *eo mari* that sea. *Ab his* by these *fit* is made *initium* the beginning *retinendi* of retaining *Silii Silius atque Velasii* and Velasius, *quod* because *per eos* by means of them *existimabant* they thought *se* that they *recuperaturos* would recover *obsides* the hostages *quos* which *dedissent* they had given *Orasso* to Crassus. *Finitimi* their neighbours, *adducti* led *auctoritate* by the example *horum* of these (*ut* as *consilia* the resolutions *Gallorum* of the Gauls *sunt* are *subita* sudden *et repentina* and hasty), *eadem de causa* for the same cause *retinent* detain *Trebium* Trebius *Terrasidiumque* and Terrasidius; *et* and *celeriter* without delay *missis legatis* having sent ambassadors, *conjurant* swear together *per suos principes* through their leaders *acturos* that they will do *nihil* nothing *nisi* except *communi consilio* by common consent, *omnesque* and that all *laturus esse* will bear *eundem exitum* the same issue *fortunæ* of fortune; *sollicitantque* and they urge *reliquas civitates* the other states, *ut* that *mallent* they should choose rather *permanere* to remain in *ea libertate* in that liberty *quam* which *acceperant* they had received *a majoribus* from their ancestors *quam* than *perferre* to endure *servitutem* the slavery *Romanorum* of the Romans. *Omni ora maritima* all

the sea-coast *celeriter* quickly *perducta* having been led over *ad suam sententiam* to their opinion, *mittunt* they send *communem legationem* a common embassy *ad Publium Crassum* to Publius Crassus, *remittat* [saying] that he must send back *sibi* to them *obsides* the hostages, *si* if *velit* he wishes *recipere* to recover *suos* his men.

IX. *Quibus de rebus* of which things *Cæsar* *Cæsar* *certior factus* having been informed *ab Crasso* by Crassus, *quod* because *ipse* himself *aberat* was distant *longius* too far, *jubet* orders *interim* in the meantime *naves longas* ships of war *ædificari* to be built in *flumine Ligeri* in the river Loire, *quod* which *influit* flows in *oceanum* into the ocean, *remiges* rowers *institui* to be established *ex provincia* out of the province, *nautas* sailors *gubernatoresque* and pilots *comparari* to be got together. *His rebus* these things *celeriter administratis* having been quickly done, *ipse* himself *quum primum* as soon as *potuit* he was able *per anni tempus* through the time of the year, *contendit* proceeded *ad exercitum* to the army, *Veneti* the Veneti *itemque* and likewise *reliquæ civitates* the other states, *cognito adventu* when they heard of the coming *Cæsar* of Cæsar, *simul* and at the same time *quod* because *intelligebant* they understood *quantum facinus* how great a crime *admisissent* they had suffered to fall in *se* upon themselves (*legatos* that ambassadors—*nomen* a name *quod* which *semper* always *fuisset* had been *apud omnes nationes* among all nations *sanctum* sacred *inviolatumque* and inviolable—*retentos* had been retained *ab se* by them *et* and *conjectos* thrown in *vincula* into chains); *pro magnitudine* in proportion to the greatness *periculi* of the danger, *instituunt* begin *parare* to prepare *bellum* war, *et* and *providere* to provide *maxime* chiefly *ea* those things *quæ* which *pertinent* relate *ad usum* to the use *navium* of ships, *majore spe* with greater hope *hoc* on this account *quod* because *multum confidebant* they trusted much *naturæ*

to the nature *loci* of the place. *Sciebant* they knew *pedestria itinera* that the foot roads *esse* were *concoisa* interrupted *æstuariis* by estuaries, *navigationem* that going by sea *impeditam* was embarrassed *propter in-scientiam* from ignorance *locorum* of the places *paucitatemque* and the fewness *portuum* of ports; *neque* nor *confidebant* did they trust *nostros exercitus* that our armies *posse* could *morari* stay *diutius* longer *apud se* among them *propter inopiam* from the want *frumenti* of corn. *Ac* and *jam* now *ut* [though it should happen] that *omnia* all things *acciderent* turned out *contra opinionem* contrary to their opinion, *tamen* yet *se* that they *plurimum posse* were very powerful *navibus* in ships. *Perspiciebant* they saw clearly *Romanos* that the Romans *neque* neither *habere* had *ullam facultatem* any facility *navium* of [procuring] ships *neque novisse* nor knew *vada* the fords, *portus* the ports, *insulasque* and the islands *eorum locorum* of those countries *ubi* where *gesturi essent* they were about to carry on *bellum* the war; *ac* and *navigationem* that navigation *esse* was *longe aliam* far different *in concluso mari* in an enclosed sea *atque* and *in vastissimo* in the very vast *atque apertissimo oceano* and open ocean. *His initis consiliis* having entered on these plans, *muniunt* they fortify *oppida* their towns, *comportant* bring together *frumenta* the corn *ex agris* from their fields *in oppida* into the towns; *cogunt* and collect *quam plurimas naves* as many ships as *possunt* they can into *Venetiam* Venetia *ubi* where *constabat* it was evident *Cæsarem* that Cæsar *primum gesturum* would first carry on *bellum* the war. *Adsciscunt* they engage *socios* as allies *sibi* to themselves *ad id bellum* for that war *Osismios* the Osismii, *Lexovios* the Lexovii, *Nannetes* the Nannetes, *Ambilintos* the Ambiliati, *Morinos* the Morini, *Diablintes* the Diablintes, *Menapios* the Menapii; *arcessunt* they summon *auxilia* aid *ex Britannia* out of Britain, *quæ* which *posita est* is situated *contra eas regiones* over against those countries.

X. *Hæ* these *erant* were *difficultates* the difficulties *belli gerendi* for carrying on the war *quas* which *ostendimus* we have shown *supra* above. *Sed* but *tamen* yet *multa* many things *incitabant* incited *Cæsarem* Cæsar *ad id bellum* to this war; *injuriae* the injuries *equitum Romanorum* of the Roman knights *retentorum* who had been detained, *rebellio* the rebellion *facta* made *post deditionem* after their surrender, *defectio* the revolt *dati obsidibus* after hostages had been given, *conjuratio* the league *tot civitatum* of so many states; *in primis* especially, *ne* lest *hac parte neglecta* this part being neglected, *reliquæ civitates* the other states *arbitrarentur* should think *idem* that the same thing *licere* was permitted *sibi* to them. *Itaque* therefore, *quominus* as much as *intelligeret* he understood *omnes fere Gallos* that almost all the Gauls *studere* were fond of *novis rebus* novelties, *et* and *excitari* were excited *mobilitè* easily *celeriterque* and quickly *ad bellum* to war, *omnes autem homines* but that all their people *studere* were eager *libertati* for liberty *natura* by nature, *et* and *odisse* hated *conditionem* the state *servitutis* of slavery; *prius quam* before that *plures civitates* more states *conspirarent* should conspire *putavit* he thought *exercitum sibi* that his army *partiendum* ought to be divided *ac* and *distribuendum* be distributed *latius* over a wider space of country.

XI. *Itaque* therefore *mittit* he sends *Titum Labienum* Titus Labienus *legatum* his lieutenant *cum equitatu* with his cavalry *in Treviros* to the Treviri *qui* who *sunt* are *proximi* nearest *flumini Rheno* to the river Rhine. *Huic* to him *mandat* he gives commission *adeat* to go to *Remos* the Remi *reliquosque Belgas* and the rest of the Belgæ, *atque* and *contineat* to keep them *in officio* in their duty; *prohibeatque* and to prevent *Germanos* the Germans *qui* who *dicebantur* were said *arcessiti* to have been sent for *auxilio* to aid *a Belgis* by the Belgæ, *si* if *conentur* they should try *transire* to cross *flumen* the river *per vim* by force

navibus in ships. *Jubet* he orders *Publium Crassum* Publius Crassus *cum duodecim cohortibus legionariis* with twelve legionary cohorts *et* and *magno numero* a large number *equitatus* of cavalry *proficisci* to set out *in Aquitaniam* to Aquitaine, *ne* lest *auxilia* aid *mittantur* should be sent *in Galliam* into Gaul *ex his nationibus* from these nations, *ac* and *tantæ nationes* such great nations *conjungantur* should be joined together. *Mittit* he sends *Quintum Titurium Sabinum* Quintus Titurius Sabinus *legatum* his lieutenant *cum legionibus tribus* with three legions *in Unellos* to the Unelli, *Curiosolitas* the Curiosolitæ *Lexoviosque* and the Lexovii *qui curet* to take care *eam manum* that that band *distinendam* should be kept apart. *Præficit* he appoints *Decimum Brutum* Decimus Brutus *adolecentem* a young man *classi* over the fleet *Gallicisque navibus* and over the Gallic vessels *quas* which *jusserat* he had ordered *convenire* to come together *ex Pictonibus* from the Pictones *et Santonis* and the Santones *reliquisque regionibus* and the other states *pacatis* that had been tranquillized; *et* and *jubet* orders him *proficisci* to set out *in Venetos* to the Veneti *quum primum* as soon as *possit* he is able. *Ipsè* he himself *contendit* marches *eo thither pedestribus copiis* with the foot forces.

XII. *Situs* the sites *oppidorum* of the towns *erant* were *fere* generally *ejusmodi* of such fashion *ut* that *posita* placed in *extremis lingulis* at the end of slips *promontoriisque* and promontories, *haberent* they had *aditum* access *neque* neither *pedibus* on foot, *quum* when *æstus* the tide *incitavisset se* had forced itself up *ex alto* from the deep, *quod* which *accidit* happened *semper* always *bis* twice *spatio* in the space *viginti quatuor horarum* of twenty-four hours, *neque* nor *navibus* by ships, *quod* because *rursus* again *minuente æstu* the tide diminishing, *naves* the ships *afflictaerentur* were dashed about *in vadis* in the shallows. *Ita* thus *utraque re* by either case *oppugnatio* the siege *oppidorum* of the towns *impediebatur* was impeded; *ac* and

si if *quando* at any time *forte* by chance *superati* overcome *magnitudine* by the hugeness *operis* of the work, *mari* the sea *excluso* having been shut out *aggere* by a bank *ac* and *molibus* by mounds, *atque* and *his* these *ferme* almost *adæquatis* being raised to a level with *mœnibus* the walls *oppidi* of the town, *cœperant* they began *desperare* to despair *de suis fortunis* of their fortune, *magno numero* a great number *navium* of ships *appulso* being brought together, *cujus rei* for doing which *habebant* they had *summam facultatem* the greatest facility, *deportabant* they carried off *sua omnia* all their goods *recipiebantque* and withdrew *se* themselves *in proxima oppida* into the nearest towns; *ibi* there *rursus* again *defendebant* they defended *se* themselves *iisdem opportunitatibus* by the same advantages *loci* of situation. *Hæc* these things *faciebant* they did *facilius* the easier *eo* for this reason *magnam partem* during a great part *æstatis* of the summer *quod* because *nostræ naves* our ships *detinebantur* were kept back *tempestatibus* by storms; *eratque* and there was *summa difficultas* the greatest difficulty *navigandi* of navigating *vasto* in the vast *atque aperto mari* and open sea, *magnis æstibus* the tides being strong, *portibus* the ports *raris* being few, *ac* and *prope nullis* hardly any at all.

XIII. *Namque* for *ipsorum naves* their ships *factæ erant* were made *armatæque* and equipped *ad hunc modum* in this manner: *carinæ* the keels *aliquanto planiores* were somewhat flatter *quam* than those *nostrarum navium* of our ships, *quo* by which *possent* they might *facilius* the more easily *excipere* meet *vada* the shallows *ac* and *decessum* the ebbing *æstus* of the tide; *proræ* their prows *admodum erectæ* very upright, *atque* and *item* likewise *puppæ* the sterns, *accommodatæ* adapted *ad magnitudinem* to the greatness *fluctuum* of the waves *tempestatumque* and of the storms; *totæ naves* all the ships *factæ* were made *ex robore* from oak *ad perferendum* to endure *quavis vim* any force *et*

contumeliam and rough usage; *transtra* the planks *confixa* fixed *trabibus* to beams *pedalibus in latitudinem* a foot in breadth, *clavis ferreis* with iron nails *crassitudine* of the thickness *digiti pollicis* of the thumb: *anchoræ* their anchors *revinctæ* made fast *ferreis catenis* to iron chains *pro funibus* instead of cables: *pelles* there were skins *pro velis* for sails, *alutæque* and leather *tenuiter confectæ* slightly tanned, *sive* either *propter* on account of *inopiam* their want *lini* of canvas *atque* and *inscientiam* ignorance *ejus usus* of its use, *sive* or *eo* for this reason (*quod* which *est* is *magis verisimile* more probable), *quod* because *arbitrabantur* they thought *tantas tempestates* that such great storms *oceani* of the ocean *ac* and *tantos impetus* such great gales *ventorum* of the winds *non sustineri* could not be resisted *ac* and *tanta onera* such great burdens *navium* of ships *regi* be managed *satis commode* well enough *velis* by sails. *Congressus* the meeting *nostræ classi* of our fleet *cum his navibus* with these ships *erat* was *ejusmodi* of such a nature, *ut* that *præstaret* it excelled *una celeritate* in speed only *et* and *pulsu* the plying *remorum* of the oars; *reliqua* the other things, *pro loci natura* considering the nature of the place, *pro vi tempestatum* and considering the force of the storms, *essent* were *aptiora* more fit *et accommodatiora* and more convenient *illis* for them; *neque enim* for neither *poterant* could *nostræ* our ships *nocere* do harm *his* to them *rostris* with the beak (*tanta* so great *erat* was *firmitudo* the strengt; *in eis* in them); *neque* nor *telum* was a dart *facile adjiciebatur* easily thrown to them *propter altitudinem* on account of their height: *et* and *eadem de causa* for the same reason *continebantur* they were shut in *minus commode* less easily *scopulis* by the rocks. *Accedebat* it was added *ut* that *quum* when *ventus* the wind *cœpisset* had begun *sævis* to be violent *et* and *dedissent se* they had committed themselves *vento* to the wind, *et* both *ferrent* they bore *tempestatem* the storm *facilius* more easily *et* and

thrown *ab Gallis* by the Gauls *acciderent* fell *gravius* with greater weight. *Una res* one thing *præparata* prepared *a nostris* by our men *erat* was *magno usui* of great use, *falces præacutæ* very sharp hooks *insertæ* attached to *affixæque* and fixed in *longuriis* poles *forma* of form *non absimili* not unlike *muralium falcium* mural hooks. *Quum* when *his* with these *funes* the ropes, *qui* which *destinabant* fastened *antennas* the yards *ad malos* to the masts, *comprehensi erant* were seized *adductique* and drawn to, *navigio* the ship *incitato* being moved on *remis* by the oars, *prærumpebantur* they were broken short off. *Quibus abscisis* which being cut, *antennæ* the yards *necessario* necessarily *concidebant* dropped down *ut* so that *quum* whereas *omnis spes* all hope *Gallicis navibus* for the Gallic ships *consisteret* depended in *velis* on the sails *armamentisque* and rigging, *his ereptis* when these were torn away, *omnis usus* all the use *navium* of the ships *eriperetur* was taken away *uno tempore* at the same moment. *Reliquum certamen* the rest of the battle *positum erat* was placed in *virtute* in valour, *qua* in which *nostri milites* our soldiers *facile* easily *superabant* excelled *atque* and *eo* by this *magis* the more *quod* because *res* the action *gerebatur* was carried on in *conspectu* in the sight *Cæsaris* of Cæsar *atque* and *omnis exercitus* of all the army: *ut* so that *nullum factum* no deed *paulo fortius* a little bolder than usual *posset* could *latere* escape notice; *omnes enim colles* for all the hills *ac* and *loca superiora* the higher grounds, *unde* from whence *erat* there was *propinquus despectus* a near look down in *mare* over the sea, *tenebantur* were held *ab exercitu* by the army.

XV. *Antennæ* the sail-yards *dejectis* having been cast down *ut diximus* as we have said, *quum* when *naves* their ships *binæ* in twos *ac* and *ternæ* in three *circumsteterant* had taken position round *singulas* each of ours, *milites* our soldiers *contendebant* strove *summa vi* with the greatest strength *transcendere* to climb over

thrown *ab Gallis* by the Gauls *acciderent* fell *gravius* with greater weight. *Una res* one thing *præparata* prepared *a nostris* by our men *erat* was *magno usui* of great use, *falces præacutæ* very sharp hooks *insertæ* attached to *affixæque* and fixed in *longuriis* poles *forma* of form *non absimili* not unlike *muralium falcium* mural hooks. *Quum* when *his* with these *funes* the ropes, *qui* which *destinabant* fastened *antennas* the yards *ad malos* to the masts, *comprehensi erant* were seized *adductique* and drawn to, *navigio* the ship *incitato* being moved on *remis* by the oars, *prærumpebantur* they were broken short off. *Quibus abscisis* which being cut, *antennæ* the yards *necessario* necessarily *concidebant* dropped down *ut* so that *quum* whereas *omnis spes* all hope *Gallicis navibus* for the Gallic ships *consisteret* depended *in velis* on the sails *armamentisque* and rigging, *his ereptis* when these were torn away, *omnis usus* all the use *navium* of the ships *eriperetur* was taken away *uno tempore* at the same moment. *Reliquum certamen* the rest of the battle *positum erat* was placed *in virtute* in valour, *qua* in which *nostri milites* our soldiers *facile* easily *superabant* excelled *atque* and *eo* by this *magis* the more *quod* because *res* the action *gerebatur* was carried on *in conspectu* in the sight *Cæsaris* of Cæsar *atque* and *omnis exercitus* of all the army: *ut* so that *nullum factum* no deed *paulo fortius* a little bolder than usual *posset* could *latere* escape notice; *omnes enim colles* for all the hills *ac* and *loca superiora* the higher grounds, *unde* from whence *erat* there was *propinquus despectus* a near look down *in mare* over the sea, *tenebantur* were held *ab exercitu* by the army.

XV. *Antenna* the sail-yards *dejectis* having been cast down *ut diximus* as we have said, *quum* when *naves* their ships *binæ* in twos *ac* and *ternæ* in three *circumsteterant* had taken position round *singulas* each of ours, *milites* our soldiers *contendebant* strove *summa vi* with the greatest strength *transcendere* to climb over

in naves into the ships *hostium* of the enemy. *Quod* which *postquam* when *barbari* the barbarians *animadverterunt* perceived *fieri* to be done, *compluribus navibus expugnatis* when many of their ships had been taken, *quum* whereas *nullum auxilium* no help *reperiretur* could be found *ei rei* for that thing, *contenderunt* they strove *petere* to seek *salutem* safety *fuga* by flight. *Ac* and *jam* now *conversis navibus* the ships being turned *in eam partem* to that part *quo* whither *ventus* the wind *ferebat* was blowing them, *subito* suddenly *tanta malacia* such a calm *ac tranquillitas* and stillness *exstitit* ensued *ut* that *non possent* they could not *movere* move *se* themselves *ex loco* from the place. *Quæ quidem res* which thing indeed *fuit* was *maxime opportuna* most seasonable *ad negotium conficiendum* for finishing the affair: *nam* for *nostri* our men *consecrati* pursuing *expugnaverunt* took them *singulas* one by one, *ut* so that *perpaucæ* very few *ex omni numero* out of all the number *interventu* by the intervention *noctis* of night *pervenerint* escaped *ad terram* to the land, *quum* seeing that *pugnaretur* the battle was fought *ab hora fere quarta* almost from the fourth hour *usque* even *ad solis occasum* till sunset.

XVI. *Quo prælio* by which battle *bellum* the war *Venetorum* of the Veneti *totiusque oræ maritimæ* and of all the sea-coast *confectum est* was finished. *Nam* for *quum* as *omnis juventus* all the youth *etiam* and also *omnes* all *gravioris ætatis* of maturer age, *in quibus* in whom *fuit* there was *aliquid consilii* any ability, *aut dignitatis* or dignity, *convenerant* had come together *co* thither; *tum* so also *coegerant* they had collected *in unum locum* into one space *quod* whatever *fuerat* there had been *navium* of ships *ubique* anywhere; *quibus amissis* which being lost, *reliqui* the rest *neque habebant* neither had *quo* any place to which *reciperent* they should withdraw *se* themselves *neque* nor *quemadmodum* [knew] in what manner *defenderent* they should defend *oppida* their towns. *Itaque* therefore *dediderunt*

they surrendered *se* themselves *suaque omnia* and all their things *Cæsari* to Cæsar; *in quos* on whom Cæsar Cæsar *statuit* resolved *vindicandum* to wreak his vengeance *eo gravius* the more severely *quo* to the end that *jus* the law *legatorum* of ambassadors *conservaretur* might be kept *a barbaris* by the barbarians *diligentius* more carefully *in reliquum tempus* for the future. *Itaque* therefore *omni senatu* all their senate *necato* having been put to death, *vendidit* he sold *reliquos* the rest *sub corona* under the crown.

XVII. *Dum* whilst *hæc* these things *geruntur* are done *in Venetis* amongst the Veneti, *Quintus Titurius Sabinus* *Quintus Titurius Sabinus pervenit* arrives *in fines* into the territories *Unellorum* of the Unelli *cum iis copiis* with those forces *quas* which *acceperat* he had received *a Cæsare* from Cæsar. *Viridovix* *Viridovix præerat* his was over these *ac* and *tenebat* held *summam imperii* the chief command *earum omnium civitatum* of all those states *quæ* which *defecerant* had revolted; *ex quibus* from which *coegerat* he had collected *exercitum* an army *magnasque copias* and large forces. *Atque* and his *paucis diebus* in these few days, *Aulerci* the Aulerci, *Eburovices* Eburovices, *Lexovique* and the Lexovii, *senatu suo interfecto* having put to death their senate *quod* because *nolebant* they were unwilling *esse* to be *auctores* the authors *belli* of the war, *clausurunt* shut *portas* their gates *conjunxeruntque* and joined *se* themselves *cum Viridovice* with Viridovix; *magnaue multitudo* and a great number *præterea* besides *perditorum hominum* of desperate men *latro-numque* and of robbers *quos* whom *spes* the hope *prædandi* of plunder *studiumque* and a desire *bellandi* for war *revocabat* called off *ab agricultura* from agriculture *et* and *quotidiano labore* daily labour. *Sabinus* *Sabinus loco* on a spot *idoneo* convenient *omnibus rebus* for all things *tenebat* kept *sese* himself *castris* in camp. *quum* whilst *Viridovix* Viridovix *consedisset* had encamped *contra eum* against him *spatio* at the distance

duum millium of two miles, *productisque copiis* and drawing out his forces *quotidie* daily *faceret potestatem* gave an opportunity *pugnandi* for fighting *ut* so that *jam* now *Sabinus Sabinus non solum* not only *veniret* came in *contemptionem* into contempt *hostibus* among the enemy, *sed etiam* but also *non nihil carperetur* was somewhat taunted *vocibus* by the words *nostrorum militum* of our soldiers; *præbuitque* and he created *tantam opinionem* such an opinion *timoris* of his being afraid *ut* that *jam* now *hostes* the enemies *auderent* dared *accedere* to approach *ad vallum* to the rampart *castrorum* of the camp. *Faciebat id* he did this *ea de causa* for this reason *quod* because *non existimabat* he did not think it proper *legato* for a lieutenant *dimicandum* to engage *cum tanta multitudine* with such a large number *hostium* of enemies, *præsertim* especially *eo absente* in the absence of him *qui* who *teneret* held *summam* the chief command, *nisi* unless *æquo loco* on favourable ground, *aut* or *aliqua opportunitate* some favourable opportunity *data* having presented itself.

XVIII. *Hac opinione* this opinion *timoris* of fear *confirmata* being confirmed, *delegit* he chose *quendam hominem* a certain man *idoneum* fit for the purpose *et callidum* and subtle, *Gallum* a Gaul [by nation], *ex his* from these *quos* whom *habebat* he had *secum* with him *causa* for the sake *auxilii* of aid. *Persuadet huic* he persuades him *magnis præmiis* by great presents *pollicitationibusque* and promises *uti transeat* to go over *ad hostes* to the enemy; *et* and *edocet* instructs him *quid* what *velit* he wishes *fieri* to be done. *Qui* who, *ubi* when *venit* he came *ad eos* to them *pro perfuga* as a deserter, *proponit* sets forth *timorem* the fear *Romanorum* of the Romans, *docet* tells them *quibus angustiis* by what difficulties *ipse Cæsar* Cæsar himself *prematur* is pressed *a Venetis* by the Veneti; *neque* nor *longius abesse* is it far distant *quin* but that *Sabinus Sabinus educat* will lead out *exercitum* his army *ex castris* from the camp *clam* secretly *proxima nocte* on

the next night *et* and *proficiscatur* set out *ad Cæsarem* to Cæsar *causa* for the sake *ferendi auxilii* of bringing aid. *Quod* which *ubi* when *auditum est* it was heard, *omnes* all *conclamant* call out *occasionem* that an opportunity *negotii bene gerendi* of striking a successful stroke *non esse amittendam* ought not to be let slip : *oportere* that it is necessary *iri* for a march to be made *ad castra* to the camp. *Multæ res* many things *hortabantur* encouraged *Gallos* the Gauls *ad hoc consilium* to this plan ; *cunctatio* the hesitation *Sabini* of Sabinus *superiorum dierum* for some days previous, *confirmatio* the confirmation [of the intelligence] *perfugæ* of the deserter ; *inopia* the want *cibariorum* of victuals, *cui rei* for which thing *erat provisum* it had been provided *ab iis* by them *parum diligenter* with too little care ; *spes* the hope *belli Venetici* of the war with the Veneti ; *et* and *quod* because *homines* men *fere credunt* generally believe *id* that *quod* which *volunt* they wish. *Adducti* led on *his rebus* by these things, *non dimittunt* they do not dismiss *Viridovicem* Viridovix, *reliquosque duces* and the other leaders *ex concilio* from the council *prius quam* before *concessum sit* it was granted *ab his* by them *uti* that *capiant* they should take *arma* arms *et* and *contentant* march *ad castra* to the camp. *Qua re* which thing *concessa* having been granted, *læti* happy *ut* as *explorata victoria* having calculated that they would be victorious, *sarmentis virgultisque collectis* having collected brushwood and shrubs *quibus* by which *compleant* they may fill up *fossas* the ditches *Romanorum* of the Romans, *pærgunt* they march *ad castra* to the camp.

XIX. *Locus* the position *castrorum* of the camp *erat* was *editus* elevated *et* and *paullatim acclivis* slightly sloping *ab imo* from the bottom *circiter passus mille* for about a mile. *Huc* hither *contenderunt* they marched *magno cursu* with great speed ; *ut* that *quam minimum spatii* as little time as possible *daretur* should be given *Romanis* to the Romans *ad colligendos* for

collecting *armandosque* and arming *se* themselves, *perveneruntque* and they came up *exanimati* out of breath. *Sabinus* *Sabinus hortatus* having encouraged *suos* his men, *dat* gives *signum* the signal *cupientibus* to them wishing for it. *Hostibus* the enemies *impeditis* being encumbered *propter* on account of *ea onera* those burdens *qua* which *ferebant* they carried, *jubet* he orders *eruptionem* a sally *fieri* to be made *subito* suddenly *duabus portis* from two gates. *Factum est* it happened *opportunitate* by the advantage *loci* of the place, *inscientia* by the ignorance *ac* and *defatigatione* the fatigue *hostium* of the enemy, *virtute* by the valour *militum* of our soldiers, *exercitatione* and by their experience *superiorum pugnarum* of former battles *ut* that *ferrent* they sustained *ne unum quidem impetum* not even one attack *nostrorum* of our men, *ac* and *statim* immediately *verterent* turned *terga* their backs. *Quos* whom *impeditos* impeded *nostri milites* our soldiers *integris viribus* with their strength fresh *consequuti* following up *occiderunt* slew *magnum numerum* a great number *eorum* of them: *equites* the cavalry *consectati* pursuing *reliquos* the others *reliquerunt* left *paucos* a few *qui* who *evaserant* had escaped *ex fuga* from flight. *Sic* thus *uno tempore* at the same time *et* both *Sabinus* *Sabinus certior factus* was informed *de navali pugna* of the naval battle, *et* and *Cæsar* *Cæsar de victoria* of the victory *Sabini* of Sabinus: *civitatesque omnes* and all the states *dediderunt se* surrendered themselves *statim* immediately *Titurio* to Titurius. *Nam* for *ut* as *animus* the spirit *Gallorum* of the Gauls *est* is *alacer* ardent *ac promptus* and forward *ad bella suscipienda* to undertake wars, *sic* so also *mens eorum* their mind *est* is *mollis* soft *ac* and *minime resistens* little resisting *ad calamitates perferendas* to bear misfortunes.

XX. *Eodem fere tempore* almost at the same time, *Publius Crassus* *Publius Crassus, quum pervenisset* having arrived in *Aquitaniam* in Aquitaine, *quæ pars* which part, *ut* as *dictum est* was said *ante* before, *et*

both *latitudine* by the extent *regionum* of its districts *et* and *multitudine* by the number *hominum* of its people *est* is *æstimanda* to be reckoned *ex tertia parte* as a third part *Galliæ* of Gaul; *quum* when *intelligeret* he understood *bellum* that there was a war *sibi gerendum* to be waged by him *ubi* where *paucis annis* a few years *ante* before *Lucius Valerius Præconinus* *Lucius Valerius Præconinus legatus* a lieutenant, *exercitu pulso* after his army was routed, *interfectus esset* had been killed, *atque* and *unde* whence *Lucius Manilius* *Lucius Manilius proconsul* the proconsul *profugisset* had fled, *impedimentis amissis* having lost his baggage, *intelligebat* perceived *non mediocrem diligentiam* that no ordinary diligence *adhibendam sibi* was to be used by him. *Itaque* therefore *re frumentaria* the commissariat *provisa* having been attended to, *auxiliis* aid *equitatuque* and cavalry *comparato* having been procured, *præterea* besides *multis viris fortibus* many brave men *evocatis* having been summoned *nominatim* by name *Tolosa* from *Tolouse*, *Carcasone* *Carcaso*, *et Narbone* and *Narbo*, *quæ* which *sunt* are *civitates* states *provinciae* of the province *Galliæ* of Gaul *finitimæ* neighbouring *his regionibus* on these regions, *introduxit* he led *exercitum* his army *in fines* into the territories *Sotiatum* of the Sotiates. *Cujus adventu* whose coming *cognito* having been known, *Sotiates* the Sotiates *magnis copiis coactis* having collected great forces, *equitatuque* and with their cavalry, *quo* in which *plurimum valebant* they were most strong, *adorti* having attacked *nostrum agmen* our army *in itinere* on their march, *primum* at first *commiserunt* they engaged in *equestre prælium* a cavalry battle; *deinde* then *equitatu suo pulso* when their cavalry was repulsed *atque* and *insequentibus nostris* our men were pursuing them, *subito* suddenly *ostenderunt* they showed *pedestres copias* their infantry *quas* which *collocaverant* they had placed in *convallē* in a valley in *insidiis* in ambuscade. *Hi* these *adorti* having attacked *nostros* our men *dis-*

jectos dispersed *renovarunt* renewed *prælium* the battle.

XXI. *Pugnatum est* it was fought *diu* for a long time *atque acriter* and sharply; *quum* inasmuch as *Sotiates* the Sotiates *freti* relying *superioribus victoriis* on their former victories *putarent* thought *salutem* that the safety *totius Aquitanie* of all Aquitaine *positam* was placed *in sua virtute* in their valour: *nostri autem* but our men *cuperent* desired *perspici* that it should be seen *quid* what *possent* they were able *efficere* to do *sine imperatore* without a commander *et* and *sine reliquis legionibus* without the other legions *adolescuntulo* with a very young man *duce* for their leader. *Tandem* at length *hostes* the enemy, *confecti* exhausted *vulneribus* with wounds, *vertere* turned *terga* their backs. *Quorum* of whom *magno numero* a great number *interfecto* having been slain, *Crassus* Crassus *ex itinere* on his way *cæpit* began *oppugnare* to attack *oppidum* the town *Sotiatum* of the Sotiates: *quibus* who *resistentibus* resisting *fortiter* bravely, *egit* he pushed forwards *vineas* pent-houses *turresque* and towers. *Illi* they *alias* at one time *eruptione tentata* having tried a sally *alias* at another time *actis cuniculis* having advanced mines *ad aggerem* against the mound *vineasque* and the pent-houses, (*cujus rei* in which work *Aquitani* the Aquitani *sunt* are *longe peritissimi* by far the most expert *propterea* on this account *quod* because *sunt* there are *arariæ sectoræ* copper mines *apud eos* among them *multis locis* in many places) *ubi* when *diligentia* through the diligence *nostrorum* of our men *intelleverunt* they perceived *nihil profici posse* that no good could be done *his rebus* by these things, *mittunt* they send *legatos* ambassadors *ad Crassum* to Crassus *petuntque* and beg *ut* that *recipiat se* he will receive them *in dediti-onem* to a capitulation. *Qua re* which thing *impetrata* being obtained, *jussi* being ordered *tradere* to give up *arma* their arms, *faciunt* they do it.

XXII. *Atque animis* the minds *omnium nostrorum*

of all our men *intentis* being intent in *ea re* on that thing *Adcantuannus* *Adcantuannus*, *qui* who *tenebat* held *summam imperii* the chief command, *alia ex parte* from another part *oppidi* of the town *cum sexcentis devotis* with six hundred devoted men (*quos* whom *illi* they *appellant* call *Soldurios* *Soldurii*) *quorum* of whom *hæc* this *est* is *conditio* the condition *uti* that *fruantur* they enjoy *omnibus commodis* all the conveniences in *vita* in life *una cum his* together with those *quorum amicitie* to whose friendship *se dediderint* they have given themselves up; *si* if *quid* anything *accidat* should happen *iis* to them *per vim* by force *aut* either *ferrent* that they should bear *eundem casum* the same misfortune *una* together with them *aut* or *consciscant mortem* bring death *sibi* on themselves (*neque* nor *adhuc* as yet *memoria* in the memory *hominum* of men *quisquam* has any one *reperitus est* been found *qui* who *recusaret* refused *mori* to die *eo interfecto* when that man was dead *cujus amicitie* to whose friendship *devovisset se* he had devoted himself): *cum iis* with these. *Adcantuannus* *Adcantuannus* *conatus* having endeavoured *facere* to make *eruptionem* a sally, *clamore sublato* a shout having been raised *ab ea parte* from that part *munitionis* of the fortifications, *quam* when *milites* the soldiers *concurrissent* had run together *ad arma* to arms, *ibique* and there *pugnatum esset* it had been fought *vehementer* fiercely, *repulsus* having been driven back *in oppidum* into the town; *tamen* yet *impetravit* he obtained *ab Crasso* from Crassus *uti* that *uteretur* he might have the benefit of *eadem conditione* the same condition *deditionis* of capitulation.

XXIII. *Armis* the arms *obsidibusque* and hostages *acceptis* having been received, *Crassus* *Crassus* *profectus est* set out in *fines* into the territories *Vocatium* of the *Vocates et Tarusatum* and of the *Tarusates*. *Tum vero* but then *barbari* the barbarians *commoti* being alarmed *quod* because *cognoverant* they had seen *oppidum* a town *munitum* defended *et* both *natura* by the

nature *loci* of the place *et manu* and by hand *expug-*
natum reduced *paucis diebus* in a few days *quibus* in
 which *ventum erat* they [the Romans] had come *eo*
 thither, *cœperunt* began *dimittere* to send out *legatos*
 ambassadors *quoquo versus* in every direction, *conjurare*
 to conspire together, *dare* to give *obsides* hostages *inter*
se among themselves *parare* to get ready *copias* forces.
Legati ambassadors *mittuntur* are sent *etiam* also *ad*
eas civitates to those states *quæ* which *sunt* are *citerioris*
Hispaniæ of Hither Spain *finitimæ* bordering *Aqui-*
taniæ on Aquitaine, *auxilia* aid *ducesque* and leaders
arcessuntur are fetched *inde* thence. *Quorum adventu*
 at whose coming *conantur* they endeavour *gerere* to
 carry on *bellum* war *magna cum auctoritate* with great
 authority *et* and *cum magna multitudo* with a great
 number *hominum* of men. *Ii vero* but those *deli-*
guntur are chosen *duces* leaders *qui* who *fuerant* had
 been *una* together *cum Quinto Sertorio* with Quintus
 Sertorius *omnes annos* during all the years [of his war]
existimabanturque and were thought *habere* to have
summam scientiam the greatest science *rei militaris* of
 military affairs. *Hi* these *consuetudine* according to
 the custom *populi Romani* of the Roman people, *in-*
stituunt begin *capere* to take *loca* the places, *munire* to
 fortify *castra* the camp, *intercludere* to cut off *nostros*
 our men *commeatibus* from their supplies. *Quod* which
ubi when *Crassus* *Crassus animadvertit* perceived
suas copias that his forces *non facile diduci* were not
 easily divided *propter* on account of *exiguitatem* their
 fewness, *hostem* that the enemy *et* both *vagari* roamed
 over the country *et obsidere* and beset *vias* the roads *et*
 and *relinquere* left *satis præsidii* sufficient garrison
castris for the camp; *obeam causam* for that reason *fru-*
mentum that corn *commeatumque* and communication
supportari were kept up *sibi* for himself *minus com-*
mode less easily; *numerum* that the number *hostium*
 of the enemies *augeri* was increasing *indies* daily; *exis-*
timavit he thought *non cunctandum* that he ought not

delay, *quin* but that *decertaret* he should decide the matter *pugna* in battle. *Hac re* this question *delata* having been referred *ad concilium* to a council, *ubi* when *intellexit* he perceived *omnes* that all *sentire idem* thought the same, *constituit* he appointed *posterum diem* the next day *pugnæ* for battle.

XXIV. *Prima luce* at first dawn *productis omnibus copiis* having drawn out all his forces, *duplici acie instituta* and having formed a double line of battle, *auxiliis* the auxiliaries *conjectis* being thrown in *mediam aciem* into the middle line, *expectabat* he watched *quid consilii* what plan *hostes* the enemies *caperent* would take. *Illi* they, *etsi* although *existimabant* they thought *se* that they *dimicatu* could fight *tuto* safely *propter* on account of *multitudinem* their number *et* and *veterem gloriâ* their ancient glory *belli* in war, *paucitatemque* and the fewness *nostrorum* of our men, *tamen* yet *arbitrabantur* thought *cutius esse* that it was safer. *obsessis viis* by blocking up the roads *conneatu intercluso* and cutting off communications, *potiri* to gain *victoria* a victory *sine ullo vulnere* without any wound: *et* and *si* if *Romani* the Romans, *propter* on account of *inopiam* the want *rei frumentariæ* of corn, *cæpissent* should begin *recipere* to withdraw *sese* themselves, *cogitabant* they meditated *adoriri* to attack them *impeditos* impeded in *agmine* on their march, *et* and *sub sarcinis* under their baggage, *inferiores* depressed *animo* in spirit. *Hoc consilio* this plan *probato* having been approved *ab ducibus* by the leaders, *copiis* the forces *Romanorum* of the Romans *productis* having been drawn out, *tenebant* they kept *sese* themselves *castris* in the camp. *Hac re* this measure *perspecta* having been seen through, *Crassus* Crassus, *quum* when *hostes* the enemies *timidiores* more cautious [than had been expected], *sua cunctatione* by their delay *atque* and *opiniõe* by the opinion [now formed of them] *effecissent* had made *nostros milites* our soldiers *alacriores* more eager *ad pugnandum* to fight.

atque and *voces* the cries *omnium* of all *audirentur* were heard *non oportere* that it was not fit *diutius* any longer *expectari* for there to be delay, *quin* but that *iretur* they should go *ad castra* to the camp, *cohortatus* having exhorted *suos* his men, *omnibus cupientibus* and all desiring it, *contendit* marches *ad castra* to the camp *hostium* of the enemy.

XXV. *Ibi* there *quum* when *alii* some *complerent* filled *fossas* the ditches, *alii* and others *conjectis multis telis* throwing many darts, *depellerent* were driving *defensores* the defenders *vallo* from the rampart *munitionibusque* and from the fortifications, *auxiliaresque* and the auxiliaries, *quibus* in whom *Crassus* Crassus *non multum confidebat* did not trust much *ad pugnam* for fighting, *subministrandis lapidibus* by supplying stones *telisque* and darts *et* and *comportandis cespitibus* bringing turf *ad aggerem* to the mound *præberent* presented *speciem* the appearance *atque opinionem* and opinion *pugnantium* of being fighting men: *quum item* whilst also *pugnaretur* it was fought *ab hostibus* by the enemy *constanter* steadily *ac* and *non timide* not timidly, *telaque* and the darts *missa* thrown *ex loco superiore* from the higher ground *acciderent* fell *non frustra* not in vain; *equites* the cavalry, *circumitis castris* having gone round the camp *hostium* of the enemies, *renunciaverunt* reported *Crasso* to Crassus *castra* that the camp *non munita esse* was not fortified *eadem diligentia* with the same care *ab decumana porta* on the side of the decuman gate, *habereque* and had *facilem aditum* an easy approach.

XXVI. *Crassus* Crassus, *cohortatus* having exhorted *præfectos* the præfects *equitum* of the cavalry *ut excitarent* to animate *suos* their men *præmiis magnis* by large rewards *pollicitationibusque* and promises, *ostendit* shows *quid* what *velit* he wishes *fieri* to be done. *illi* they, *ut* as *erat imperatum* had been commanded, *quatuor cohortibus eductis* having led out four cohorts *quæ* which *relictæ* having been left *præsidio* for a guard.

castris to the camp, *erant* were *intrita* not worn out *ab labore* from labour, *et* and *circumductis* having led them round *longiore itinere* by a longer way, *ne possent* that they might not *perspici* be seen *ex castris* from the camp *hostium* of the enemy, *oculis* the eyes *mentibusque* and the minds *omnium* of all *intentis* being fixed *ad pugnam* on the fight, *pervenerunt* arrived *celeriter* quickly *ad eas munitiones* to those works *quas* which *disimus* we mentioned, *atque* and *his prorutis* having pulled down these, *constiterunt* stood in *castris* in the camp *hostium* of the enemy *prius quam* before that *posset* it could *videri* be seen *plane* distinctly *aut* or *cognosci* be known *ab iis* by them *quid rei* what thing *gereretur* was being done. *Tunc vero* but then *clamore audito* a shout being heard *ab ea parte* from that part *nostri* our men, *redintegratis viribus* their vigour being renewed, *quod* which *plerumque* generally *consuevit* has been accustomed *accidere* to happen *in spe* in the hope *victoriæ* of victory, *cæperunt* began *impugnare* to attack *acrius* more sharply. *Hostes* the enemy *circumventi* surrounded *undique* on every side, *omnibus rebus* all their affairs *desperatis* being despaired of, *intenderunt* strove *se dejicere* to cast themselves down *per munitiones* over the works *et* and *petere* to seek *salutem* safety *fuga* by flight. *Quos* whom *equitatus* the cavalry *consectatus* having pursued *apertissimis campis* in the open fields, *ex numero* out of the number *millium quinquaginta* of fifty thousand *quæ* which *constabat* it appeared *convenisse* had come together *ex Aquitania* from Aquitaine *Cantabrisque* and the Cantabrians *vix quarta parte* a fourth part *relieta* being left, *recepit se* withdrew themselves *multa nocte* late at night *in castra* to the camp.

XXVII. *Hæc pugna* this battle *audita* being heard of, *maxima pars* the greatest part *Aquitaniæ* of Aquitaine *dedidit* surrendered *sese* itself *Crasso* to Crassus *misitque* and sent *obsides* hostages *ultro* voluntarily : *quo in numero* in which number *fuerunt* were *Tarbelli* the

Tarbelli, Bigerriones the Bigeriones, Preciani the Preciani, Vocates the Vocates, Tarusates the Tarusates, Elusates the Elusates, Garites the Garites, Ausci the Ausci, Garumni the Garumni, Sibuzates the Sibuzates, Cocosates the Cocosates. *Pauca nationes* a few nations *ultima* most remote *neglexerunt* neglected *facere* to do *hoc* this, *confise* trusting *tempore* in the season *asini* of the year *quod* because *hiems* winter *suberat* was at hand.

XXVIII. *Eodem fere tempore* almost at the same time *Cæsar* Cæsar, *etsi* though *æstas* the summer *jann* already *prope exacta erat* was nearly drawn out, *tamen* yet *quod* because *omni Gallia* all Gaul *pacata* being subdued, *Morini* the Morini *Menapiique* and the Menapii *supererant* remained, *qui* who *essent* were in arms *neque unquam misissent* and had never sent *legatos* ambassadors *ad eum* to him *de pace* concerning peace, *arbitratus* thinking *id bellum* that that war *posse* could *celeriter* speedily *confici* be finished, *adjuvit* led *exercitum* his army *eo thither*. *Qui* who [they] *instituerunt* resolved *agere* to carry on *bellum* the war *longe alia ratione* in a far other manner *ac* than *reliqui Galli* the other Gauls. *Nam* for *quod* because *intelligebant* they perceived *maximas nationes* that the greatest nations *que* which *contendissent* had engaged *pnelio* in battle, *pulsas esse* were beaten *superatasque* and overcome, *habebantque* and they had *continentes silvas* continuous woods *ac* and *paludes* marshes, *contulerunt* they conveyed *eo thither* *se* themselves *suaque omnia* and all their goods. *Ad initium* at the beginning *quarum silvarum* of which woods *quum* when *Cæsar* Cæsar *pervenisset* had arrived, *instituissetque* and had begun *munitre* to fortify *castra* his camp, *neque* nor *interim* in the meanwhile *hostis visus esset* had the enemy been seen, *nostris* our men *dispersis* being dispersed *in opere* at their work, *subito* suddenly *evolaverunt* they rushed out *ex omnibus partibus* from all parts *silva* of the wood *et* and *fecerunt* made *impetum* an attack *in nostros* on our men. *Nostri* our men *celeriter* quickly *cepe-*

runt took up arms, *repuleruntque* and repelled *eos* them in *silvas* into the woods, *et* and *compluribus interfectis* having killed many *sequuti* following them *longius* too far *impeditioribus locis* in more intricate places *deperdiderunt* lost *paucos* a few *ex suis* of their own men.

XXIX. *Deinceps* then *reliquis diebus* during the remaining days *Cæsar* *Cæsar instituit* resolved *cadere* to cut down *silvas* the woods: *et* and *ne* lest *quis impetus* any attack *posset* might *fieri* be made *militibus* on the soldiers *inermibus* unarmed *imprudentibusque* and off their guard *ab latere* on their flank, *collocabat* he placed *omnem eam materiam* all that timber *quæ* which *erat cæsa* had been cut down, *conversam* turned *a* *hostem* towards the enemy, *et* and *extruebat* piled it up *pro vallo* as a rampart *ad utrumque latus* on either side. *Magno spatio* a large space *confecto* having been effected *incredibili celeritate* with incredible quickness *paucis diebus* in a few days, *quum* when *jam* already *pecus* their cattle *atque* and *extrema impedimenta* their rear baggage *tenerentur* were possessed *ab nostris* by our men, *ipsi* themselves *peterent* were seeking *densiores silvas* the thicker woods; *tempestates* storms *consequutæ sunt* came on *ejusmodi* of such a nature *ubi* that *opus* the work *intermitteretur* was left off *necessario* of necessity *et* and *continuatione* from the continuation *imbrium* of the rains, *milites* the soldiers *non possent* could not *contineri* be kept *sub pellibus* under skins [tents]. *Itaque* therefore *omnibus eorum agris* all their lands *vastatis* having been laid waste, *viciis* their towns *ædificiisque* and buildings *incensis* having been burnt, *Cæsar* *Cæsar reduxit* led back *exercitum* his army *et* and *collocavit* settled them in *hibernis* in winter-quarters in *Aulercis* among the *Aulerci Lexovisque* and the *Lexovii*, *item* and also *reliquis civitatibus* in the other states *quæ* which *fecerant* had made *bellum* war *proxime* most recently.

Book II.

I. *Ea hieme* in that winter *quæ* which *sequuta est* followed, (*qui* which *fuit* was *annus* the year *Oncio Pompeio* when Cneius Pompeius, Marco Crasso and Marcus Crassus *consulibus* were consuls) *Usipetes* the *Usipetes*, *Germani* a German tribe, *et item* and also *Tencteri* the Tencteri, *cum magna multitudine* with a great multitude *hominum* of men, *transierunt* crossed *flumen Rhenum* the river Rhine, *non longe* not far *a mari* from the sea *quo* into which *Rhenus* the Rhine *influit* flows, *Causa* the cause *tanseundi* of their crossing *fuit* was *quod* that *exagitati* having been harassed *ab Suevis* by the Suevi *complures annos* several years *bello* in war, *premebantur* they were straitened *et prohibebantur* and were cut off *agricultura* from tilling the land. *Gens* the nation *Suevorum* of the Suevi *est* is *longe* by far *maxima* the greatest *et bellicosissima* and most warlike *Germanorum omnium* of all the Germans. *Hi* these *dicuntur* are said *habere* to have *centum pagos* a hundred cantons, *ex quibus* of which *educunt* they lead out *quotannis* yearly *ex finibus* from their territories *singula millia* each a thousand *armatorum* of armed men *causa* for the sake *bellandi* of making war: *reliqui* the rest, *qui* who *manserint* have remained *domi* at home, *alunt* maintain *se* themselves *atque illos* and them. *Hi* these *rursus* again *anno post* the year after *invicem* in turn *sunt* are in *armis* in arms; *illi* the others *remanent* remain *domi* at home. *Sic* thus *neque* neither *agricultura* agriculture *nec ratio* nor the science *atque usus* and practice *belli* of war *intermittitur* is discontinued. *Sed* but *apud eos* among them *est* there is *nihil* nothing *agri* of land *privati* private *ac separati* and portioned off; *neque* nor *licet* is it lawful *remanere* to remain in *uno loco* in one place *causa* for the sake *incolendi* of occupying the land *longius* longer *anno* than a year.

Neque nor *vivunt* do they live *multum* much *frumento* on corn, *sed* but *maximam partem* for the most part *lacte* on milk *atque pecore* and on their cattle, *suntque* and they are *multum* much [engaged] in *venationibus* in hunting, *quæ res* which circumstance, *et* both *genere* by the nature *cibi* of their food, *et* and *quotidiana exercitatione* by daily exercise *et* and *libertate* by freedom *vita* of life, (*quod* because *a pueris* from their childhood *assuefacti* having been used *nullo officio* to no duty *aut disciplina* or subjection, *faciunt* they do *nihil* nothing *omnino* at all *contra voluntatem* against their will) *et* both *alit* nourishes *vires* their strength, *et* and *efficit* makes them *homines* men *immani magnitudine* of immense stature *corporum* of body. *Atque* and *adduxerunt se* they have brought themselves in *eam consuetudinem* into such an habit *ut* that *frigidissimis locis* in the coldest places *neque habeant* they neither wear *quidquam vestitus* any article of clothing *præter pelles* except skins (*propter* on account of *exiguitatem* the littleness *quarum* of which *magna pars* a great part *corporis* of their body *aperta est* is naked), *et* and *laventur* they wash themselves in *fluminibus* in the rivers.

II. *Est* there is *aditus* access *mercatoribus* for merchants *ad eos* to them *magis* more *eo* on this account *ut* that *habeant* they may have *quibus* [persons] to whom *vendant* they may sell *quæ* the things which *ceperint* they have taken *bello* in war, *quam* than *quo* because *desiderent* they desire *ullam rem* anything *importari* to be imported *ad se* among them. *Quin etiam* moreover *Germani* the Germans *non utuntur* do not use *jumentis* beasts of burden, *quibus* in which *Gallia* Gaul *maxime* especially *delectatur* delights, *quæque* and which *parant* they procure *impenso pretio* at an extravagant price, *importatitiis* as imported among them, *sed* but *quæ* the ones which *sunt* are *nata* born *apud eos* among them *prava* sickly *atque deformia* and deformed, *efficiunt* they render *hæc* these

quotidiana exercitatione by daily exercise *ut* [such] that *sint* they are *summi laboris* [capable of] the highest labour. *Sæpe* often *equestribus præliis* in cavalry engagements *desiliunt* they leap down *ex equis* from their horses *ac* and *præliantur* fight *pedibus* on foot, *assuefaciuntque* and they accustom *equos* their horses *remanere* to remain *eodem vestigio* in the same spot, *ad quos* to which, *quum* when *usus est* it is necessary, *recipiunt se* they withdraw themselves *celeriter* swiftly, *neque* nor *moribus eorum* according to their customs *quidquam habetur* is anything considered *turpius* more disgraceful *aut* or *inertius* more lazy *quam* than *uti* to use *ephippiis* housings. *Itaque* therefore, *quamvis* although *pauci* few, *audent* they dare *adire* to advance *ad quemvis numerum* against any number *equitum* of cavalry *ephippiatorum* having saddles. *Non sinunt* they do not allow *vinum* wine *importari* to be imported *omnino* at all *ad se* among them, *quod* because *arbitrantur* they think *homines* that men *remollescere* are weakened *ad ferendum laborem* for bearing toil *atque* and *effeminari* made puny *ea re* by that article.

III. *Putant* they think *esse* that it is *maximam laudem* the highest credit *publice* nationally *agros* that the lands *vacare* lie waste *quam latissime* as widely as possible *a suis finibus* from their borders; *huc re* that by this circumstance *significari* is signified *magnum numerum* that a great number *civitatum* of the states *non posse* are not able *sustinere* to withstand *suam vim* their power. *Itaque* therefore *ex una parte* on one side *a Suevis* from the Suevi *circiter* about *sexcenta millia passuum* six hundred miles *agri* of land *dicuntur* are said *vacare* to be desolate. *Ubii* the Ubii *succedunt* come up *ad alteram partem* on the other side, *quorum civitas* whose state *fuit* was *ampla* large *atque* *florens* and flourishing, *ut captus est* as is the condition *Germanorum* of the Germans, *et* and *pauillo humaniores* a little more civilised *quam* than *sunt* are *cæteri* the others *eiusdem generis* of the same race,

propterea on this account *quod* because *attingunt* they touch *Rhenum* the Rhine, *mercatoresque* and merchants *ventitant* come and go *multum* much *ad eos* among them, *et* and *ipsi* they themselves *assuefacti sunt* are accustomed *Gallicis moribus* to Gallic customs *propter propinquitatem* on account of their nearness. *Quum* when *Suevi* the Suevi, *experti* having tried *hos* these *sæpe* often *multis præliis* in many battles, *non potuissent* were not able *expellere* to drive them out *finibus* from their territories, *propter amplitudinem* on account of the size *gravitatemque* and power *civitatis* of the state, *tamen* nevertheless *fecerunt* they made them *vectigales* tributary *sibi* to themselves, *ac* and *redegerunt* brought them down *multo humiliores* much lower *infirmioresque* and to a much weaker condition.

IV. *In eadem causa* in the same case *fuere* were *Usipetes* the Usipetes *et Tenchtheri* and the Tenchtheri *quos* whom *supra diximus* we mentioned above, *qui* who *complures annos* for many years *sustinuerunt* withstood *vim* the power *Suevorum* of the Suevi; *ad extremum tamen* but at last *expulsi* having been driven out *agris* from their territories, *et* and *vagati* having wandered *multis locis* in many parts *Germaniæ* of Germany, *triennium* for three years, *pervenerunt* they came *ad Rhenum* to the Rhine, *quas regiones* which lands *Menapii* the Menapii *incolebant* were inhabiting *et* and *habebant* had *agros* lands, *ædificia* buildings, *vicosque* and villages *ad utramque ripam* on either bank *Fluminis* of the river: *sed* but *preterræti* frightened *aditu* by the approach *tantæ multitudinis* of so great a multitude, *demigraverant* they had departed *ex his ædificiis* from these buildings *que* which *habuerant* they had had *trans Rhenum* across the Rhine, *et* and *præsidii dispositis* having placed garrisons *cis Rhenum* on this side of the Rhine, *prohibebant* hindered *Germanos* the Germans *transire* from crossing. *Illi* they *experti* having tried *omnia* all things *quum* when *neque*

possent they were neither able *contendere* to contend with them *vi* in power, *propter inopiam* on account of the want *navium* of ships, *neque* nor *clam* secretly *transire* to cross *propter custodias* because of the guards *Menapiorum* of the Menapii, *simulaverunt* pretended *se* that they *reverti* were returning in *suas sedes* to their own settlements *regionesque* and territories; *et* and *progressi* having gone forward *viam* a journey *tridui* of three days, *rursus* again *reverterunt* they returned, *atque* and *omni hoc itinere* all this journey *confecto* having been effected *equitatu* by cavalry *una nocte* in one night, *oppresserunt* they fell upon *Menapios* the Menapii *inscios* ignorant *inopinantesque* and not expecting it; *qui* who *certiores facti* having been informed *per exploratores* by scouts *de discessu* about the departure *Germanorum* of the Germans, *remigraverant* had gone back *sine metu* without fear in *suos vicos* to their villages *trans Rhenum* across the Rhine. *His interfectis* these having been slain, *navibusque eorum* and their ships *occupatis* taken *prius quam* before that *ea pars* that part *Menapiorum* of the Menapii *quæ* which *erat* was *quieta* quiet in *suis sedibus* in their stations *citra Rhenum* on this side of the Rhine *certior fieret* could be informed of it *transierunt* they crossed *flumen* the river *atque* and *omnibus eorum ædificiis* all their buildings *occupatis* having been seized, *aluerunt se* they supported themselves *eorum copiis* on their stores *reliquam partem* the remaining part *hiemis* of the winter.

V. *Cæsar* *Cæsar* *certior factus* having been informed *de his rebus* of these things, *et* and *veritus* fearing *infirmi- tatem* the weakness *Gallorum* of the Gauls, *quod* because *sunt* they are *mobiles* fickle in *capiendis consiliis* in taking counsels, *et* and *plerumque* student are generally disposed *novis rebus* to revolutions, *existimavit* thought *nihil* that nothing *committendum* was to be trusted *his* to them. *Est autem* but there is *hoc* this *Gallicæ consuetudinis* in the custom of Gaul *ut*

that *et* both *cogant* they compel *viatores* travellers *consistere* to stop *etiam* even *invitos* against their will, *ei* and *querant* ask *quod* what *quisque* each *eorum* of them *audierit* may have heard *aut* or *cognoverit* may have learnt *de quaquere* about any affair *et* and *vul-gus* the mob *circumsistat* surrounds *mercatores* the merchants *in oppidis* in the towns, *cogantque* and compel them *pronunciare* to tell *quibus ex regionibus* from what countries *veniant* they come *quasque res* and what things *cognoverint* they have learnt *ibi* there. *Permoti* moved *his rumoribus* by these reports *atque auditionibus* and tidings, *sæpe ineunt* they often enter upon *consilia* designs *de summis rebus* about the most important affairs *quorum* of which *necesse est* it is the necessary result *eos pœnitere* that they repent *e vestigio* speedily, *quum* inasmuch as *serviant* they give heed *incertis rumoribus* to uncertain reports, *et* any *plerique* many *respondeant* answer *ficta* untruths *ad eorum voluntatem* to meet their wishes.

VI. *Qua consuetudine* which custom *cognita* being known, *Cæsar Cæsar*, *ne occurreret* that he might not meet with *graviori bello* too heavy a war, *proficiscitur* sets out *maturius* sooner *quam* than *consuerat* he had been wont *ad exercitum* to the army. *Quum* when *venisset* he had come *eo* thither, *cognovit* he found *ea* that those things *quæ* which *suspiciatus erat* he had suspected *fore* would take place *facta* had been done, *legationes* that embassies *missas* had been sent *ab nonnullis civitatibus* from certain states *ad Germanos* to the Germans, *eos que* and that they *invitados* had been asked *uti discederent* to depart *ab Rheno* from the Rhine, *omniaque* and that all things *quæ* which *postulassent* they had demanded *fore parata* would be made ready *ab se* by them. *Qua spe* by which hope *adducti* induced, *Germani* the Germans *jam* already *vagabantur* were beginning to wander *latius* more widely, *et* and *pervenerant* had arrived *in fines* at the territories *Eburonum* of the Eburones, *et* and *Condrusorum* the

Condrusi qui who sunt are clientes the clients Trevirorum of the Treviri. Principibus the chiefs Gallie of Gaul evocatis having been called forth, Cæsar Cæsar existimavit thought ea that those things quæ which cognoverat he had learnt dissimulanda ought to be concealed sibi by him, eorumque animis and their minds permulsis having been soothed et confirmatis and strengthened, imperatoque equitatu and cavalry having been demanded of them, constituit he determined gerere to carry on bellum war cum Germanis with the Germans.

VII. *Re frumentaria* the commissariat department comparata having been prepared equitibusque and cavalry delectis having been chosen, cæpit he began facere to make iter his march in ea loca towards those places in quibus locis in which audiebat he heard Germanos that the Germans esse were; a quibus from whom quum when abesset he was distant iter a march paucorum dierum of a few days, legati ambassadors venerunt came ab his from them, quorum oratio whose speech fuit was hæc as follows: Germanos that the Germans neque neither inferre bellum wage war priores first Populo Romano on the Roman People, neque tamen nor yet recusare do they refuse quin contendunt to engage armis in arms si if lacessantur they are attacked; quod because hæc this sit is consuetudo the custom Germanorum of the Germans tradita handed down a majoribus by their ancestors, quicumque who-soever inferant bellum wage war on them, resistere to resist them neque deprecari and not to supplicate: tamen nevertheless dicere they say hæc this, venisse that they have come invitos unwilling ejectos cast out domo from home. Si if Romani the Romans velint wish suam gratiam their good will, posse that they are able esse to be utiles amicos useful friends eis to them, vel either attribuant let them assign agros lands sibi to them vel or patientur let them suffer tenere to hold eos those quos which possiderint they

have gained possession of *armis* by arms. *Sed* that they *concedere* yield *Suevis unis* to the Suevi alone, *quibus* to whom *ne dii quidem immortales* not even the immortal Gods *possint* are able *pares esse* to be equal: *esse quidem* that there is indeed *neminem* no one *reliquum* remaining in *terris* on the earth *quem* whom *non possint* they are not able *superare* to conquer.

VIII. *Ad hæc* to these things *Cæsar* *Cæsar respondit* answered *quæ* what *visum est* it seemed good to him. *Sed* but *fuit* [this] was *exitus* the conclusion *orationis* of his speech. *Sibi* that for him *posse esse* there could be *nullam amicitiam* no friendship *cum his* with them, *si* if *remanserent* they remained in *Gallia* in Gaul: *neque verum esse* that neither is it reasonable *qui* that those who *non potuerint* could not *tueri* defend *suos fines* their own lands, *occupare* should occupy *alienos* the lands of others, *neque* nor *ullos agros* are any lands *vacare* vacant in *Gallia* in Gaul *qui* which *possint* can *dari* be given *sine injuria* without injury *præsertim* especially *tantæ multitudini* to so great a multitude. *Sed* but *licere* that it is allowed them *si* if *velint* they wish *considerare* to settle in *finibus* in the territories *Ubiorum* of the Ubii, *quorum legati* whose ambassadors *sint* are *apud se* with him *et* and *querantur* are complaining *de injuriis* about the injuries *Suevorum* of the Suevi *et* and *petant* are seeking *auxilium* help *a se* from him. *Se* that he *impetraturum* will obtain *hoc* this *ab Ubiis* from the Ubii.

IX. *Legati* the ambassadors *dixerunt* said *se* that they *relaturos* would report *hæc* these things *ad suos* to their own men; *et* and *re deliberata* the thing having been considered, *reversuros* would return *post tertium diem* after the third day *ad Cæsarem* to Cæsar: *interea* in the meantime *petierunt* they asked *ne moveret* that he would not move *castra* his camp *propius se* nearer to them. *Cæsar* *Cæsar dixit* said *ne id quidem* that not even that *posse* could *impetrari* be obtained *a se* from him; *cognoverat enim* for he had found out mag-

nam partem that a great part *equitatus* of their cavalry *aliquot diebus* some days *ante* before *missam* had been sent *ab iis* by them *trans Mosam* across the Meuse *ad Ambivaritos* to the Ambivariti *causa* for the sake *prædandi* of plundering *frumentandique* and foraging. *Arbitrabatur* he thought *hosequites* that these cavalry *expectari* were expected, *atque* and *causa* that for the sake *ejus rei* of that affair *moram* delay *interponi* was interposed.

X. *Mosa* the Meuse *profluit* flows forth *ex monte Vosego* from Mount Vosegus, *qui* which *est* is in *finibus* in the territories *Lingonum* of the Lingones *et* and *parte quadam recepta* having received a certain branch *ex Rheno* from the Rhine *quæ* which *appellatur* is called *Vahalis* the Vahalis, *efficitque* and forms *insulam* the island *Batavorum* of the Batavians, *influit* flows in *oceanum* into the ocean *neque longius* and not further *ab oceano* from the ocean *octoginta millibus passuum* than eighty miles, *transit* passes over in *Rhenum* into the Rhine. *Rhenus autem* but the Rhine *oritur* rises *ex Lepontiis* from among the Lepontii *qui* who *incolunt* inhabit *Alpes* the Alps *et* and *fertur citatus* flows swiftly *longo spatio* for a long distance *per fines* through the territories *Nantuatum* of the Nantuates, *Helvetiorum* of the Helvetii, *Sequanorum* of the Sequani, *Mediomatricorum* of the Mediomatrici, *Tribucorum* of the Tribuci, *Trevirorum* of the Treviri, *et* and *ubi* when *appropinquat* it nears *oceano* the ocean *diffluit* it flows asunder in *plures partes* in various directions, *multis* many *ingentibusque insulis* and large islands *effectis* having been formed by it, *quarum* of which *magna pars* a great part *incolitur* is inhabited *a feris* by savage *barbarisque nationibus* and barbarous nations (*ex quibus* out of whom *sunt* there are some *qui* who *existimantur* are thought *vivere* to live *piscibus* on fishes *atque* and *ovis* the eggs *avium* of birds); *influitque* and it flows *multis capitibus* by many heads in *oceanum* into the ocean.

XI. *Quum* since *Cæsar* *Cæsar abesset* was distant *ab hoste* from the enemy *haud amplius* not more *duodecim millibus passuum* than twelve thousand paces, *legati* the ambassadors *revertuntur* return *ad eum* to him, *ut* as *erat constitutum* had been agreed: *qui* who *congressi* having met him *in itinere* on their journey, *orabant* entreated him *magno opere* with great earnestness *ne progrediretur* not to proceed *longius* any farther. *Quum* when *non impetrassent* they had failed to obtain *id* that, *petebant* they asked *uti* that *præmitteret* he would send forward *ad eos equites* to those cavalry *qui* who *antecessissent* had preceded *agmen* the line of march *prohiberetque* and hinder *eos* them *pugna* from fighting, *utique* and that *faceret potestatem* he would give an opportunity *sibi* to them *mitendi* of sending *legatos* ambassadors *in Ubios* among the Ubii, *quorum* of whom *si* if *principes* the chiefs *et senatus* and senate *fecissent fidem* should make faith *sibi* with them *jurejurando* on oath, *ostendebant* they declared *se* that they *usuros* would accept *ea conditione* that condition *quæ* which *ferreter* might be proposed *a Cæsare* by *Cæsar*: *daret* and that he would allow *sibi* to them *spatium* the period *tridui* of three days *ad conficiendas eas res* to effect these matters. *Cæsar* *Cæsar arbitratur* thought *hæc omnia* that all these things *pertinere* tended *eodem illi* to that same purpose *ut* that *mora* a delay *tridui* of three days *interposita* being interposed, *equites eorum* their cavalry, *qui* which *abessent* were absent, *reverterentur* might return: *tamen* however, *dixit* he said *sese* that he *non processurum* would not proceed *eo die* on that day *longius* farther *quatuor millibus passuum* than four miles *causa* for the sake *aquationis* of getting water: *huc convenirent* that they should come hither to meet him *postero die* the next day *quam frequentissimi* as many in number as possible, *ut* that *cognosceret* he might examine *de eorum postulatis* about their demands. *Interim* meanwhile *mittit* he sends *ad præfectos* to the

officers *qui* who *anteceſſerant* had gone before *cum omni equitatu* with all the cavalry *qui nunciarent* should tell them *ne laceſſerent* not to provoke *hostes* the enemy *prælio* by a battle, *et* and *ſi* if *ipſi* themſelves *laceſſerentur* were attacked, *sustinerent* to hold out *quoad* until *ipſe* himſelf *acceſſiſſet* had come up *propius* nearer *cum exercitu* with the army.

XII. *At* but *hostes* the enemy *ubi primum* as ſoon as *conſpexerunt* they ſaw *noſtros equites* our cavalry, *quorum* of which *erat* there was *numerus* the number *quinque milium* of five thouſand, *quum* though *ipſi* themſelves *non haberent* had not *amplius* more than *octingentos* eight hundred, *quod* becauſe *ii* thoſe *qui* who *ierant* had gone *trans Moſam* acroſs the Meuſe *frumentandi cauſa* for the purpoſe of foraging, *nondum redierant* had not yet returned. *noſtris* our men *nihil timentibus* fearing nothing, *quod* becauſe *legati eorum* their ambaffadors *paullo ante* a little before *diſceſſerant* had gone away *a Cæſare* from Cæſar, *atque* and *iſ dies* that day *petitus erat* had been demanded *ab eis* by them *inductis* for a truce, *impetu facto* having made an attack, *celeriter* quickly *perturbaverunt* diſordered *noſtros* our men. *Rurſus* again *reſiſtentibus noſtris* on our men rallying *conſuetudine ſua* after their cuſtom *deſiluerunt* they leapt down *ad pedes* on their feet *ſubfoſſisque equis* and having ſtabbed our horſes underneath, *com pluribusque noſtris* and many of our men *dejectis* having been unhorſed, *conjecerunt* threw *reliquos* the reſt *ad fugam* into flight *atque* and *egerunt* drove them *ita perterritos* in ſuch a panic *ut* that *non reſiſterent* they did not ſtop *fuga* from flight *prius quam* before that *veniſſent* they had come in *conſpectum* in ſight *agminis noſtri* of our army. *In eo prælio* in that battle *quatuor et ſeptuaginta* ſeventy-four *ex equitibus noſtris* of our cavalry *interficiuntur* are ſlain. *In his* among theſe *vir fortiffimus* a very brave man, *Piſo Piſo*, *Aquitanus* an Aquitanian *natus* deſcended *ampliſſimo genere* from a moſt noble family.

cujus avus whose grandfather *obtinuerat* had held *regnum* the sovereignty in *civitate sua* in his own state, *appellatus* having been called *amicus* a friend *ab senatu nostro* by our senate. *Hic* he *quum* when *ferret auxilium* he was bearing help *fratri* to his brother *intercluso* who had been hemmed in *ab hostibus* by the enemy, *eripuit* rescued *illum* him *ex periculo* from danger: *ipse* himself *dejectus* thrown *vulnerato equo* from his wounded horse, *restitit* resisted *quoad* as long as *potuit* he could *fortissime* most bravely. *Quum* when *circumventus* surrounded, *multis vulneribus acceptis* having received many wounds, *cecidisset* he had fallen *atque* and *frater* his brother *qui* who *jam* now *excesserat* had left *prælio* the battle, *animum advertisset* *id* had perceived that *procul* from a distance *incitato equo* spurring on his horse, *obtulit* he offered *sese* himself *hostibus* to the enemy *atque interfectus est* and was killed.

XIII. *Hoc facto prælio* this battle having happened, *Cæsar* Cæsar *arbitrabatur* thought *jam* that now *neque legationes* neither embassies *audiendas* ought to be listened to *sibi* by him *neque* nor *conditiones* offers *accipiendas* to be received *ab his* from those *qui* who *petita pace* having sought peace *per dolum* by deceit *atque insidias* and treachery, *ultro* of their own accord *bellum intulissent* had made war on him. *Expectare vero* but to wait *dum* until *copiæ* the forces *hostium* of the enemy *augerentur* should be increased *equitatusque* and their cavalry *reverteretur* should return, *judicebat* he judged *esse* to be *summæ dementiæ* [an act] of extreme madness, *et* and *cognita infirmitate* knowing the fickleness *Gallorum* of the Gauls, *sentiebat* he perceived *quantum auctoritatis* how much influence *hostes* the enemy *jam* already *consequuti essent* had acquired *inter eos* among them *uno prælio* by one battle, *quibus* to whom *existimabat* he thought *nihil spatii* that no time *dandum* was to be given *ad consilia capienda* for concerting measures. *His rebus* these things *consti-*

tutis having been settled *et* and *consilio communicato* having taken common counsel *cum legatis* with his lieutenants *et quæstore* and quæstor, *ne prætermitteret* not to let slip *quem diem* any opportunity *pugnæ* of battle. *Opportuna res* a most fortunate circumstance *accidit* happened *quod* that *mane* in the morning *postridie* on the morrow *ejus diei* of that day *Germani* *frequentes* a large body of Germans *usi* using *et eadem perfidia* both the same treachery, *et simulatione* and pretence, *omnibus principibus* all their chiefs *majoribusque natu* and elders by birth *adhibitis* being brought with them, *venerunt* came *ad eum* to him *in castra* in the camp *simul* at the same time, *ut* as *dicebatur* was pretended *causa* for the sake *sui purgandi* of excusing themselves *quod commississent prælium* because they had joined battle *pridie* the day before *contra* otherwise *atque* than *ipsi* themselves *petissent* had sought *atque* and *dictum esset* it had been agreed, *simul* and also *ut impetrarent* to obtain *si* if *possent* they could *quid de induciis* anything of arrangements for a truce *fallendo* by deceiving him. *Quos* whom *Cæsar* *Cæsar gavisus* being pleased *oblatus sibi* to have fallen into his hands *jussit* ordered *illos* them *retineri* to be detained, *ipse* himself *eduxit* led out *omnes copias* all his forces *castris* from the camp *jussitque* and ordered *equitatum* the cavalry *subsequi* to follow *agmen* the line of march *quod* because *existimabat* he thought *perterritum esse* that it was daunted *recenti prælio* by the late battle.

XIV. *Acie* the army *instituta* having been drawn out *triplici* in three lines, *et* and *itinere* a march *octo milium* of eight miles *confecto* having been made *celeriter* swiftly *pervenit* he arrived *ad castra* at the camp *hostium* of the enemy, *priusquam* before that *Germani* the Germans *possent* could *sentire* perceive *quid* what *ageretur* was being done. *Qui* who *perterriti* being frightened *subito* suddenly *omnibus rebus* at all the circumstances, *et* both *celeritate* at the quickness *adventus nostri* of our coming, *et* and *discessu* at the departure *suorum* of

their own chiefs, *neque spatio dato* and no time being given *consilii habendi* of holding a council *neque* nor *arma capiendi* of taking arms, *perturbantur* are thrown into doubt *præstaretne* whether it would be better *educere* to lead out *copias* their forces *adversus hostem* against the enemy, *an* or *defendere* to defend *castra* the camp *an* or *petere* to seek *salutem* safety *fuga* in flight. *Quorum timor* whose fear *quum* when *significaretur* it was shown *fremitu* by their shouting *et concursu* and running together, *milites nostri* our soldiers *incitati* provoked *perfidia* by their treachery *pristini diei* of the day before, *irruerunt* burst their way in *castra* into the camp. *Quorum* of whom *qui* those who *potuerunt capere* could take *arma* their arms *celeriter* speedily *restiterunt* made resistance *nostris* to our men *paulisper* for a short time, *atque* and *prælium commiserunt* joined battle *inter carros* among the carts *impedimenta* and baggage: *at* but *reliqua multitudo* the rest of the multitude *puerorum* of boys *mulierumque* and of women—*nam* for *excesserant domo* they had left home *transierantque* and had crossed *Rhenum* the Rhine *cum omnibus suis* with all their people—*passim* everywhere *cœpit* began *fugere* to flee: *ad quos consecrandos* to pursue whom *Cæsar* *Cæsar* *misit* sent *equitatem* the cavalry.

XV. *Germani* the Germans *clamore audito* hearing a noise *post tergum* behind their back, *quum* when *viderent* they saw *suos* their men *interfici* being slain, *armis abjectis* throwing away their arms *relictisque signis militaribus* and leaving their military standards, *ejeserunt se* threw themselves *ex castris* out of the camp, *et* and *quum* when *pervenissent* they had arrived *ad confluentum* at the junction *Mosæ* of the Meuse *et Rheni* and the Rhine, *reliqua fuga desperata* despairing of further flight, *magno numero interfecto* a great number having been slain, *reliqui* the rest *præcipitaverunt se* threw themselves *in flumen* into the river, *atque ibi* and there *oppressi* overcome *timore* by

fear, *lassitudine* by weariness, *vi* and the force *fluminis* of the river, *perierunt* they perished. *Nostri omnes* all our men *incolumes* safe *ad unum* to a man, *perpaucis vulneratis* very few having been wounded *ex timore* after the terror *tanti belli* of so great a war, *quum* whereas *numerus* the number *capitum* of heads *hostium* of the enemy *fuisset* had been *quadringenta et triginta millia* four hundred and thirty thousand, *recepērunt se* withdrew themselves *in castra* into the camp. *Cæsar* Cæsar *fecit* gave *his* to those *quos* whom *retinuerat* he had retained *in castris* in his camp *potestatem discedendi* leave to depart. *Illi* they *veriti* fearing *supplicia* punishments *cruciatusque* and tortures *Gal-lorum* from the Gauls, *quorum agros* whose lands *vexaverant* they had harassed, *dixerunt* said *se* that they *velle* wished *remanere* to remain *apud eum* with him. *Cæsar* Cæsar *concessit* granted *his* to them *libertatem* permission [to do so].

XVI. *Germanico bello* the German war *confecto* being ended, *Cæsar* Cæsar *statuit* determined *sibi transeundum esse* that he ought to cross *Rhenum* the Rhine *multis de causis* for many reasons, *quarum* of which *illa* this *fuit* was *justissima* the most just, *quod* that *quum* since *videret* he saw *Germanos* that the Germans *tam facile impelli* were so easily induced *et venirent* to come *in Galliam* into Gaul, *voluit* he wished *eos* them *timere* to be afraid *quoque* also *de suis rebus* concerning their own affairs at home, *quum* when *intelligerent* they found out *exercitum* that the army *populi Romani* of the Roman people *et posse* both was able *et audere* and dared *transire* to cross *Rhenum* the Rhine. *Accessit etiam* to this also was added *quod* that *illa pars* that part *equitatus* of the cavalry *Usipetum* of the Usipetes *et Tenchtherorum* and the Tenchtheri, *quam* which *supra commemoravi* I said above *transisse* had crossed *Mosam* the Meuse *causa* for the sake *prædandi* of plundering *et frumentandi* and of foraging, *neque interfuisse* and were not present

prælio at the battle, *recepert se* had betaken themselves *post fugam* after the rout *suorum* of their people *trans Rhenum* across the Rhine *in fines* into the territories *Sigambrorum* of the Sigambri, *conjunxeratque* and had united *se* themselves *cum iis* with them. *Ad quos* to whom *quum* when *Cæsar* *Cæsar* *misisset* had sent *nuncios* messengers *qui postularent* to ask them *dederent* to give up *sibi* to him *eos* those *qui* who *intulissent bellum* had waged war *sibi* on him *Galliæque* and on Gaul, *responderunt* they answered *Rhenum* that the Rhine *finire* bounded *imperium* the empire *populi Romani* of the Roman people, *si* that if *non existimaret* he did not think it *æquum* just *Germanos* for the Germans *transire* to cross over *in Galliam* into Gaul *se invito* without his consent, *cur* why *postularet* did he demand *esse* that there should be *quidquam imperii sui* any authority of his own *aut potestatis* or power *trans Rhenum* beyond the Rhine. *Ubi autem* but the *Ubi*, *qui* who *uni* alone *ex Transrhenanis* of the people beyond the Rhine *miserant* had sent *legatos* ambassadors *ad Cæsarem* to Cæsar, *fecerant* had made *amicitiam* an alliance, *dederant* and had given *obsides* hostages, *orabant* entreated him *magno opere* earnestly *ut ferret* to bring *auxilium* help *sibi* to them *quod* because *graviter premerentur* they were pressed hard *ab Suevis* by the Suevi, *vel* or *si* if *prohiberetur* he was hindered *facere id* from doing that *occupationibus* by the affairs *reipublicæ* of the state, *modo transportaret* that he would only lead over *Rhenum* the Rhine *exercitum* his army, *id* that *futurum* would be *satis* enough *sibi* for them *ad auxilium* as a help *spemque* and a hope *reliqui temporis* for the time to come: *tantum* that such *esse* was *nomen* the name *atque opinionem* and reputation *ejus exercitus* of his army *etiam* even *ad ultimas nationes* among the remotest countries *Germanorum* of the Germans, *Ariovisto pulso* from Ariovistus having been beaten, *et hoc prælio* and from this battle *novissimo facto* last fought

uti that *possint* they may *esse* be *tuti* safe *opinione* by the reputation *atque amicitia* and friendship *populi Romani* of the Roman people. *Pollicebantur* they promised *magnam copiam* a great abundance *navium* of ships *ad transportandum exercitum* to carry the army over.

XVII. *Cæsar* *Cæsar* *de his causis* for these reasons *quas* which *commemoravi* I have mentioned *decreverat* had resolved *transire Rhenum* to cross the Rhine, *sed* but *neque arbitrabatur* neither thought *esse* that it was *satis tutum* safe enough, *neque* nor *statuebat* did he determine it *esse* to be *sue dignitatis* consistent with his own dignity *neque* nor *populi Romani* that of the Roman people *transire* to cross *navibus* in ships. *Itaque* therefore *etsi* although *difficultas* the difficulty *faciendi pontis* of making a bridge *proponeretur* was put forward *summa* as very great *propter latitudinem* because of the width, *rapiditatem* the swiftness *altitudinemque* and depth *fluminis* of the river, *tamen* nevertheless *existimabat* thought *id contendendum* that that ought to be effected *sibi* by him *aut aliter* or otherwise *exercitum* that the army *non transducendum* ought not to be led across. *Instituit* he devised *hanc rationem* this plan *pontis* of a bridge. *Jungebat* he joined *inter se* together *intervallo* at the distance *duorum pedum* of two feet *tigna bina* two beams *sesquipedalia* a foot and half square, *paullum præacuta* somewhat sharpened *ab imo* towards the bottom, *dimensa* proportioned *ad altitudinem* to the depth *fluminis* of the river. *Quum* when *defixerat* he had fixed *hæc* these *immissa* let down in *flumen* into the river *machinationibus* with machines *adegeratque* and had driven them down *fistucis* with wooden mallets *non directa* not placed *ad perpendiculum* perpendicularly *modo* after the manner *publicæ* of a pile, *sed* but *prona* declining *ac fastigata* and brought to a point *ut procumberent* so as to slope *secundum naturam* according to the direction *fluminis* of the river, *contraria* opposite *illis*

to these *intervallo* at the distance *quadragenum pedum* of forty feet *ab inferiore parte* lower down the stream *statuebat* he fixed *item* also *bina* pairs *juncta* joined *ad eundem modum* after the same fashion *conversa* turned *contra vim* against the force *atque impetum* and current *fluminis* of the river. *Hæc utraque* both these *insuper* moreover *distinebantur* were held apart *trabibus* by [transverse] beams, *bipedalibus* two feet square, (*quantum* which was the distance that *junctura* the joining *eorum tignorum* of those piles *distabat* was distant) *immissis* let in *ab extrema parte* at their extremities *binis fibulis* with pairs of fastenings, *utrimque* on each side, *quibus disclusis* which being kept apart *atque revinctis* and bound back in *contrariam partem* in opposite directions, *tanta* so great *erat* was *firmitudo* the firmness *operis* of the work *atque ea* and such *natura* the nature *rerum* of things *ut* that *quo* in proportion as *major vis* a greater force *aquæ* of water *incitavisset se* had forced itself against it *hoc* in the same proportion *tenerentur* [the beams] were held *illigata* bound *arctius* more closely. *Hæc* these [beams] *contexebantur* were joined together *directa materie* by straight timber *injecta* laid over them, *et consternebantur* and were covered *longuriis* with lathes *cratibusque* and hurdles, *ac* and *nihilo secius* nevertheless *et* both *sublicæ* stakes *agebantur* were driven in *oblique* slantingly *ad inferiorem partem* towards the lower part *fluminis* of the river, *quæ* which *subjectæ* placed *pro pariete* by way of buttress *et conjunctæ* and joined *cum omni opere* with the whole work *exciperent* might sustain *vim* the force *fluminis* of the river, *et aliæ item* and also others *mediocri spatio* at a moderate distance *supra pontem* above the bridge, *ut* that *si* if *trunci* trunks *arborum* of trees *sive naves* or ships *essent missæ* should be sent [down the river] *a barbaris* by the barbarians *dejiciendi operis* [for the purpose] of overthrowing the work, *vis* the force *earum rerum* of such things *minueretur* might be lessened *his defensoribus*

by these defences, *neu nocerent* and that they might not hurt *ponti* the bridge.

XVIII. *Decem diebus* within ten days *quibus* from which *materia* the timber *cæpta erat* had begun *comportari* to be brought together, *omni opere effecto* all the work having been finished *exercitus* the army *transducitur* transported. *Cæsar* *Cæsar relicto firmo præsidio* leaving a strong guard *ad utramque partem* at each end *pontis* of the bridge, *contendit* directs his march *in fines* into the territories *Sigambrorum* of the Sigambri. *Interim* in the meantime *legati* ambassadors *veniunt* come *ad eum* to him *a compluribus civitatibus* from a great many states, *quibus* to whom *petentibus* seeking *pacem* peace *atque amicitiam* and friendship, *respondit* he answered *liberaliter* graciously *jubetque* and orders *obsides* hostages *adduci* to be brought *ad se* to him. *At* but *Sigambri* the Sigambri *ex eo tempore* from the time *quo* at which *pons* the bridge *cæptus est* was begun *institui* to be built, *fuga comparata* having prepared flight *hortantibus iis* by the advice of those *ex Tenchtheris* of the Tenchtheri *atque Usipetibus* and Usipetes *quos* whom *habebant* they had *apud se* among them, *excesserant* had gone forth *finibus suis* from their territories *exportaveruntque* and had taken away *omnia sua* all their effects *abdiderantque* and had hidden *se* themselves *in solitudinem* in the desert *ac silvas* and woods.

XIX. *Cæsar* *Cæsar moratu* having delayed *paucos dies* a few days *in eorum finibus* in their territories *incensisque* and having burnt *omnibus vicis* all their villages *ædificisque* and buildings, *frumentisque succisis* and having cut down their corn, *recepit se* retired *in fines* into the boundaries *Ubiorum* of the Ubii *atque pollicitus* having promised *suum auxilium* his help *iis* to them *si* if *premerentur* they were pressed *ab Suevis* by the Suevi *cognovit* he learnt *hæc* these things *ab iis* from them: *Suevos* that the Suevi, *posteaquam* after that *comperissent* they had found out *per expio-*

ratores by their scouts *pontem* that the bridge *fieri* was being built, *concilio habito* having held a council *more suo* after their custom, *dimisisse* had despatched *nuncios* messengers *in omnes partes* into all quarters, *uti* that *demigrarent* they should go out *de oppidis* from the towns, *deponerent* deposit *liberos* their children, *uxores* wives, *suaque omnia* and all their property *in silvas* in the woods *atque omnes* and all *qui* who *possent* were able *ferre* to bear *arma* arms *convenirent* should assemble *in unum locum* into one place, *hunc* that this *esse delectum* had been chosen *fere medium* about the middle *earum regionum* of those provinces *quas* which *Suevi* the Suevi *obtinerent* occupied: *hic* that here *constituisse* they had resolved *expectare* to await *adventum* the coming *Romanorum* of the Romans, *atque ibi* and there *decertare* to decide the contest. *Quod* which *quum* when *Cæsar* *Cæsar* *comperit* found out, *omnibus his rebus* all these affairs *confectis* having been finished *causa* for the sake *quarum rerum* of which affairs *constituerat* he had determined *transducere exercitum* to lead over his army, *ut* that *injiceret* he might strike *metum* fear *Germanis* into the Germans, *ut* that *ulcisceretur* he might revenge himself on *Sigambros* the Sigambri, *ut* that *liberaret* he might free *Ubios* the Ubii *obsidione* from blockade, *consumtis decem et octo diebus* having spent eighteen days *omnino* altogether *trans Rhenum* beyond the Rhine, *arbitratus* thinking *satis profectum* that enough had been gained *et* both *ad laudem* for honour *et* and *ad utilitatem* for interest, *recepit se* he withdrew himself *in Galliam* into Gaul, *resciditque* and cut down *pontem* the bridge.

XX. *Exigua parte* a short portion *æstatis* of summer *reliqua* remaining, *Cæsar* *Cæsar*, *etsi* although *in his locis* in these places, *quod* because *omnis Gallia* all Gaul *vergit* bends *ad Septentriones* towards the north, *hiemes* the winters *sunt* are *maturæ* early, *tamen* nevertheless *contendit* hastened *proficisci* to set out *in Britanniam* into Britain, *quod* because *fere omnibus*

bellis Gallicis in almost all the wars of Gaul *intelligebat* he found out *inde* that from thence *auxilia* help *subministrata* had been furnished *hostibus nostris* to our enemies, *et* and *si* [even] if *tempus anni* the time of year *deficeret* should fail him *ad bellum gerendum* for carrying on war, *tamen* yet *arbitrabatur* he thought *fore* that it would be *magno usui* of great use *sibi* to him *si* if *modo* only *adisset* he should visit *insulam* the island, *perspexisset* see into *genus* the nature *hominum* of the people, *cognovisset* and learn *loca* their situations, *portus* harbours, *aditus* and landing places *quæ* which *fere omnia* nearly all *erant* were *incognita* unknown *Gallis* to the Gauls. *Neque enim* for neither *quisquam* does any one *adit illo* go thither *temere* without cause *præter mercatores* except merchants, *neque* nor *est* is *quidquam* anything *notum* known *ipsis* to themselves *præter* except *oram maritimam* the sea-coast *atque eas regiones* and those parts *quæ* which *sunt* are *contra Galliam* over against Gaul. *Itaque* therefore *evocatis mercatoribus ad se* having invited merchants to him *undique* from all sides, *neque* neither *poterat* was he able *reperire* to find out *quanta* how great *esset* was *magnitudo* the size *insulae* of the island *neque* nor *quæ nationes* what nations *aut quantæ* or how powerful *incolerent* inhabited it, *neque* nor *quem usum* what experience *belli* in war *haberent* they had *aut* or *quibus institutis* what institutions *uterentur* they used, *neque* nor *qui* what *essent* were *idonei portus* the fitting harbours *ad multitudinem* for a number *majorum navium* of larger ships.

XXI. *Ad hæc cognoscenda* to find out these things *priusquam* before that *faceret periculum* he should run the hazard, *arbitratus* thinking *Caium Volusenum* that Caius Volusenus *esse* was *idoneum* a proper person, *præmittit* he sends him forward *cum navi longa* with a ship of war. *Huic* to him *mandat* he gives instructions *uti* that *exploratis omnibus rebus* when he has reconnoitred everything *revertatur* he should return

ad se to him *quam primum* as soon as possible. *Ipsæ* himself *proficiscitur* sets out *in Morinos* towards the Morini, *quod* because *inde* from thence *transjectus* the passage *in Britanniam* into Britain *erat* was *brevissimus* the shortest. *Huc* hither *jubet* he orders *naves* ships *undique* from all sides *convenire* to come together *ex finitimis regionibus* from the neighbouring countries, *et classem* and the fleet *quam* which *fecerat* he had created *superiore æstate* in the former summer *ad Veneticum bellum* for the war with the Veneti. | *Interim* in the meantime *consilio ejus cognito* his design having become known, *et* and *perlato* reported *ad Britannos* to the Britons *per mercatores* by the merchants, *legati* deputies *veniunt* come *ad eum* to him *a compluribus civitatibus* from very many provinces *ejus insulæ* of that island, *qui polliceantur* to promise *dare* to give *obsides* hostages *atque* and *obtemperare* to submit *imperio* to the authority *populi Romani* of the Roman people. *Quibus auditis* these having been heard, *liberaliter pollicitus* having made liberal promises *hortatusque* and having exhorted them *ut permanerent* to remain *in ea sententia* in that resolution, *remittit eos* he sends them back *domum* home, *et* and *una cum his* along with them *mittit* he sends *Commium* one Commius, *quem* whom *ipse* himself *constituerat* had established *regem* king *ibi* there *Atrebatibus superatis* after he had subdued the Atrebates, *et* and *cujus virtutem* whose valour *et consilium* and wisdom *probabat* he approved of, *et* and *quem* whom *arbitrabatur* he thought *fidelem* faithful *sibi* to him, *cujusque auctoritas* and whose influence *habebatur* was reckoned *magni* of great weight *in iis regionibus* in those parts. *Huic* to him *imperat* he gives orders *adeat* to visit *civitates* the states *quas possit* which he is able, *horteturque* and encourage them *ut sequantur* to follow *fidem* the allegiance *populi Romani* of the Roman people, *nuncietque* and tell them *se* that he *venturum* will come *eo* thither *celeriter* with speed. *Volusenus*

Volusenus *perspectis regionibus* having viewed the country *quantum facultatis* as far as power *potuit* could *dari* be given *ei* to him *qui* who *non auderet* dared not *egredi* disembark *navi* from the ship, *ac* and *committere se* trust himself *barbaris* to the barbarians *revertitur* returns *quinta die* on the fifth day *ad Cæsarem* to Cæsar, *renunciatque* and reports *quæ* what things *perspexisset* he had discovered *ibi* there.

XXII. *Dum* whilst *Cæsar* *Cæsarmoratur* stops in his *locis* in these places *causa* for the purpose *parandarum navium* of preparing ships, *venerunt* there came *ad eum* to him *legati* ambassadors, *ex magna parte* from a great part *Morinorum* of the Morini *qui excusarent se* to excuse themselves *de consilio* for their policy *superioris temporis* of former times *quod* because *homines barbari* being barbarians *et imperiti* and inexperienced *nostræ consuetudinis* in our mode of acting *fecissent* they had made *bellum* war *populo Romano* on the Roman people, *pollicerenturque* and to promise *se* that they *facturos* would do *ea* those things *quæ* which *imperasset* he should command. *Cæsar* *Cæsar arbitratu* thinking *hoc* that this *accidisse* had happened *satis opportune* very luckily *sibi* for him *quod* because *neque volebat* he neither wished *relinquere* to leave *hostem* an enemy *post tergum* behind his back, *neque* nor *habebat* had *facultatem* the power *belli gerendi* of carrying on the war *propter tempus* on account of the time *anni* of the year, *neque judicabat* nor thought *has occupationes* that these engagements *tantularum rerum* in such small matters *anteponendas* ought to be preferred *sibi* by him *Britanniæ* to his [design upon] Britain, *imperat iis* imposes on them *magnum numerum* a great number *obsidum* of hostages. *Quibus adductis* which being brought, *recepit* he received *eos* them *in fidem* into allegiance. *Circiter octogintis navibus* about eighty ships *onerariis* of burden *coactis* having been got together, *contractisque* and provided *quot* as many as *existimabat* he thought *esse* to be

satis sufficient *ad transportandas* for transporting *duas legiones* two legions, *quidquid* whatever *habebat* he had *longarum navium* of long ships *præterea* over and above *distribuit* he distributed *quæstori* to the quæstor, *legatis* the lieutenants, *præfectisque* and the prefects. *Huc accedebant* to these were added *octodecim onerariæ naves* eighteen ships of burden *quæ* which *tenebantur* were detained *vento* by the wind *ab octe millibus passuum* upwards of eight miles *ex eo loco* from that place, *quo minus possent* so that they were not able *pervenire* to arrive at *eundem portum* the same harbour. *Has* these *distribuit* he assigned *equitibus* to the cavalry, *dedit* he gave *reliquum exercitum* the rest of the army *Quinto Titurio Sabino* to Quintus Titurius Sabinus *et Lucio Aurunculeio Cottæ* and Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, *legatis* his lieutenants, *deducendum* to be led down in *Menapios* into [the country of] the Menapii, *atque* and in *eos pagos* into those villages *Morinorum* of the Morini *ab quibus* from which *legati* ambassadors *non venerant* had not come *ad eum* to him. *Jussit* he ordered *Publium Sulpicium Rufum* Publius Sulpicius Rufus, *legatum* his lieutenant, *tenere* to hold *portum* the harbour *cum eo præsidio* with such a garrison *quod as arbitrabatur* he thought *esse* to be *satis* enough.

XXIII. *His rebus constitutis* these matters being settled, *nactus* having obtained *tempestatem* a wind *idoneam* fit *ad navigandum* for sailing, *solvit* he weighed anchor *fere tertia vigilia* about the third watch, *jussitque* and ordered *equites* the cavalry *progredi* to march in *ulteriorem portum* to the more distant port, *et conscendere* and to embark on board *naves* the ships *et sequi se* and follow him. *A quibus* by whom *quum* when *id* that *esset administratum* was done *paullo tardius* somewhat too slowly, *ipse* himself *attigit* reached *Britanniam* Britain *cum primis navibus* with the first ships *circiter* nearly *quarta hora* at the fourth hour *diei* of the day, *atque ibi* and there *conspexit* he saw *armatas copias*

the armed forces *hostium* of the enemy *expositas* drawn out in *omnibus collibus* on all the hills. *Cujus loci* of which place *hæc* this *erat* was *natura* the nature; *mare* the sea *adeo continebatur* was so closed in *montibus angustis* by narrow hills, *uti* that *telum* a dart *posset* could *adjici* be thrown *ex locis superioribus* from the higher ground in *lutus* on to the shore. *Arbitratus* thinking *hunc* this *nequaquam* by no means *idoneum locum* a fit place *ad egrediendum* for landing, *expectavit* he waited in *anchoris* at anchor *ad horam nonam* to the ninth hour *dum* until *reliquæ naves* the other ships *convenirent* should assemble *eo* thither. *Interim* meanwhile *convocatis legatis* having assembled the lieutenants *tribunisque* and tribunes *militum* of the soldiers, *ostendit* he showed *et* both *quæ* what things *cognovisset* he had learnt *ex Voluseno* from Volusenus *et* and *quæ* what *vellet* he wished *fieri* to be done, *monuitque* and reminded them *ut* that *ratio* the nature *rei militaris* of military affairs, *maxime* especially *ut* that *maritimæ res* naval affairs *postularent* demanded *ut quæ* as being things which *haberent* had *celerem* a rapid *atque instabilem motum* and wavering movement, *omnes res* that all things *administrarentur* should be executed *ab eis* by them *ad nutum* at the word of command *et ad tempus* and at the moment. *His dimissis* these being dismissed, *et nactus* and having obtained *secundum ventum* a favourable wind *et æstum* and tide *uno tempore* at the same time, *dato signo* the signal having been given *et sublatiis anchoris* and having weighed anchor, *progressus* having advanced *ab eo loco* from that place *circiter* about *septem millia passuum* seven miles, *constituit* he stationed *naves* the ships *litore* on a shore *aperto* open *ac plano* and level.

XXIV. *At* but *barbari* the barbarians, *cognito consilio* having perceived the design *Romanorum* of the Romans, *præmisso equitatu* sending forward their cavalry *et essedariis* and charioteers *quo genere* which kind *plerumque* for the most part *consuerunt* they have been

accustomed *uti* to use in *præliis* in battles *subsequuti* following *reliquis copiis* with the rest of the forces *prohibebant* tried to hinder *nostros* our men *navibus egredi* from disembarking. *Erat* there was *summa difficultas* very great difficulty *ob has causas* for these reasons, *quod* that *naves* the ships, *propter magnitudinem* because of their size, *non possent* could not *constitui* be stationed *nisi* except in *alto* in deep water; *militibus autem* but for our soldiers *ignotis locis* in unknown places *impeditis manibus* with hands entangled, *oppressis* being weighed down *magno* by the great *et gravione* and heavy load *armorum* of their arms, *et desiliendum erat* it was necessary both to leap down *de navibus* from their ships *et consistendum* and stand in *fluctibus* in the waves *et pugnandum* and to fight *cum hostibus* with the enemy *simul* at the same time, *quum* whereas *illi* they *aut* either *ex arido* on dry land *aut* or *progressi* advancing *paullulum* a very little in *aquam* into the water *expediti* free *omnibus membris* in all their members, *notissimis locis* in well-known places *conjecerent* cast *tela* their weapons *audacter* boldly *et incitarent* and spurred on *equos* their horses *insuefactos* accustomed [to this mode of fighting]. *Quibus rebus* at which things *nostri* our men *perterriti* being frightened *atque omnino imperiti* and wholly unskilled *hujus generis* in this kind *pugnæ* of battle *non nitebantur* did not strive *omnes* of them *eadem alacritate* with the same readiness *ac studio* and zeal *quo* which *con-sueverant* they had been wont *uti* to show in *pedestribus præliis* in land battles.

XXV. *Quod* which *quum* when *Cæsar* *Cæsar* *animum* *advertit* perceived, *jussit* he ordered *naves longas* the ships of war *quarum* of which *et* both *species* the form *erat* was *inusitatio* more strange *barbaris* to the barbarians, *et* and *motus* their *actio* *expeditior* more ready *ad usam* for use, *remi* *ari* to be removed *paullum* a little *ab onerariis navibus* from the transport vessels *et* and *incitari* to be pushed forward *remis* with

sars *et constitui* and to be stationed *ad apertum latus* towards the open flank *hostium* of the enemy, *atque* and *hostes* the enemy *inde* from thence *propelli* to be driven forward *ac submoveri* and forced away *fundis* with slings, *sagittis* arrows, *tormentis* and war engines. *Quæ res* which expedient *fuit* was *magno usui* of great use *nostris* to our men. *Nam* for *barbari* the barbarians *permoti* astonished *et* both *figura* at the make *navium* of our ships, *et motu* and the motion *remorum* of the oars *et inusitato genere* and the unusual kind *tormentorum* of engines, *constiterunt* halted *ac modo* and now *retulerunt pedem* retreated *paullum* a little. *Atque* and *nostris militibus* while our soldiers *cunctantibus* were delaying, *maxime* chiefly *propter altitudinem* because of the depth *maris* of the sea, *qui* he who *ferebat* bore *aquilam* the eagle *decimæ legionis* of the tenth legion, *contestatus* calling to witness *deos* the gods *ut* that *ea res* that thing *eveniret* might turn out *feliciter* luckily *legioni* for the legion, *inquit* said, "*Desilite* leap down, *commilitones* fellow-soldiers, *nisi* unless *vultis* you wish *prodere* to betray *aquilam* your eagle *hostibus* to the enemy: *ego* I *certe* at least *præstitero* will perform *meum officium* my duty *reipublicæ* to the state *atque* and *imperator* to my commander." *Quum* when *dixisset* he had said *hoc* this *magna voce* with a loud voice, *projecit* he threw *se* himself *ex navi* out of the ship, *atque* and *cæpit* began *ferre* to carry *aquilam* the eagle *in hostes* among the enemy. *Tum* then *nostri* our men, *cohortati inter se* exhorting one another *ne* lest *tantum dedecus* so great a disgrace *admitteretur* should be allowed, *desiluerunt* leaped down *universi* in a body *ex navi* out of the ship: *item* also *alii* others *ex proximis navibus* from the nearest ships, *quum* when *conspexissent* they had beheld *hos* these, *subsequuti* following them *appropinquarunt* drew near *hostibus* to the enemy.

XXVI. *Pugnatum est* the battle was fought *acriter* sharply *ab utrisque* by both. *Nostri tamen* our men,

however, *quod* because *poterant* they were able *neque* neither *servare* to keep *ordines* their ranks, *neque* nor *firmiter insistere* to get firm footing, *neque* nor *subsequi* to follow *signa* the standards, *atque* and *alii ex alia navi* one from one ship and one from another, *aggregabat* attached *se* himself *quibuscumque signis* to whatever standards *occurrerat* he had met, *magnopere perturbabantur* were greatly disordered. *Hostes vero* but the enemy, *notis omnibus vadis* knowing all the shallows, *ubi* when *ex litore* from the shore *conspexerant* they had espied *aliquos singulares* any single persons *egredientes* coming forth *ex navi* out of a ship, *incitatis equis* spurring their horses, *adoriebantur* attacked them *impeditos* embarrassed [in the water]; *plures* many *circumsistebant* surrounded *paucos* a few, *alii* others *ab latere aperto* on the open flank *coniciebant* threw *tela* weapons *in universos* on the whole body of them. *Quod* which *quum* when *Cæsar* *Cæsar* *animum advertisset* had perceived *jussit* he ordered *scaphas* the boats *longarum navium* of the galleys *item* and also *speculatoria navigia* the reconnoitring vessels *compleri* to be filled *militibus* with soldiers *et* and *submittebat* sent them *subsidia* as a help *iis* to those *quos* whom *conspexerat* he had seen *laborantes* in distress. *Nostri* our men, *simul* as soon as *constiterunt* they had got a footing together *in arido* on dry land, *suis omnibus consequutis* with all their companions following, *fecerunt* made *impetum* an attack *in hostes* on the enemy *atque* and *dederunt eos* put them *in fugam* to flight, *neque potuerunt* and were not able *prosequi* to pursue them *longius* farther, *quod* because *equites* the cavalry *non potuerant* had not been able *tenere* to hold on *cursum* their course *atque capere* and to reach *insulam* the island. *Hoc* this *unum* alone *defuit* was wanting *Cæsari* to *Cæsar* *ad pristinam fortunam* to complete his former good fortune.

XXVII. *Hostes* the enemy *superati* overcome *prælio* in battle, *simul atque* as soon as *receperunt se* they had

recovered *ex fuga* from their flight, *statim* immediately *miserunt* sent *legatos* ambassadors *ad Cæsarem* to Cæsar *de pace* to treat for peace: *polliciti sunt* they promised *sese* that they *datuos* would give *obsides* hostages, *facturosque* and would do *quæ* whatever things *imperasset* he might command. *Una cum* his *legatis* together with these ambassadors *Commius* *Commius Atrebas* the Atrebatian *venit* came, *quem* who *demonstraveram* I had shown *supra* above *præmissum* was sent over a *Cæsare* by Cæsar in *Britanniam* into Britain. *Hunc* him *egressum* landed *e navi* from the ship, *quum* although *perferret* he was bearing *mandata* a message *imperatoris* of his general *ad eos* to them *modo* in the character *oratoris* of ambassador, *illi* they *comprehenderant* had seized *atque conjecerant* and cast in *vincula* into chains; *tum* then *prælio facto* when the battle was fought *remiserunt* they sent him back *et* and *in petenda pace* in seeking peace *contulerunt* laid *culpam* the blame *ejus rei* of that affair in *multitudinem* upon the mob *et* and *petiverunt* begged *ut* that *ignosceretur* it might be forgiven *propter imprudentiam* on account of their imprudence. *Cæsar* Cæsar *questus* having complained *quod* that *quum* when *petissent* they had asked *pacem* peace *ab se* from him *ultro* of their own accord, *legatis missis* by sending ambassadors in *continentem* into the continent *intulissent bellum* they had waged war on him *sine causa* without reason, *dixit* said *noscere* that he pardoned *imprudentiæ* their imprudence *imperavitque* and demanded *obsides* hostages; *quorum* of which *illi* they *dederunt* gave *partem* part *statim* immediately, *partem* part *arcessitam* being sent for *ex longinquiore locis* from more distant places *dixerunt* they said *datuos* that they would give *paucis diebus* in a few days. *Interea* meanwhile *jusserunt* they ordered *suos* their people *remigrare* to return in *suos agros* to their fields, *principeque* and their chiefs *convenere* assembled *undique* from all sides, *et* and *commiserunt* began *commendare* to commit *se* them-

selves *civitatesque suas* and their states *Cæsari* to Cæsar.

XXVIII. *Pace confirmata* peace being established *his rebus* by these affairs, *post quartam diem quam* the fourth day after that *ventum est* they came in *Britanniam* into Britain, *octodecim naves* the eighteen ships *de quibus* about which *demonstratum est* mention has been made *supra* above, *quæ* which *sustulerant* had taken on board *equites* the cavalry, *solverunt* weighed anchor *ex superiore portu* from the upper port *leni vento* with a gentle wind. *Quæ* which *quum* when *appropinquarent* they came near *Britanniæ* to Britain *et* and *viderentur* were seen *ex castris* from the camp, *subito* suddenly *tanta tempestas* such a storm *coorta est* arose *ut* that *nulla* none *earum* of them *posset* could *tenere* hold *cursum* its course, *sed aliæ* but some *referrentur* were carried back *eodem* to the same place *unde* from which *erant profectæ* they had set out, *aliæ* others *dejicerentur* were driven *cum magno periculo sui* with great danger to themselves *ad inferiorem partem* to the lower extremity *insulæ* of the island *quæ* which *est* is *propius* nearer to *occasum* the setting *solis* of the sun: *quæ tamen* which, however, *anchoris jactis* having cast anchor, *quum* when *complerentur* they were filled *fluctibus* by the waves, *necessario* of necessity *profectæ* having put out *in altum* to sea *adversa nocte* on a tempestuous night, *petierunt* made for *continentem* the continent.

XXIX. *Eadem nocte* the same night *accidit* it happened *ut* that *esset* it was *plena luna* the full moon, *qui dies* which day *consuevit* is wont *efficere* to make *maritimos æstus* the sea tides *maximos* very great *in Oceano* in the Ocean, *idque* and that *erat* was *incognitum* unknown *nostris* to our men. *Ita* thus *uno tempore* at one time *et* both *æstus* the tide *complebat* filled *longas naves* the long ships *quibus* in which *Cæsar* Cæsar *curaverat* had taken care *transportandum exercitum* to transport the army, *quasque* and which *subduxerat*

he had hauled up *in aridum* on dry ground, *et* and *tempestas* the storm *adfliebat* was shattering *onerarias* the ships of burden *quæ* which *erant deligatæ* were bound *ad anchoras* at anchor, *neque* nor *dabatur* was there allowed *ulla facultas* any power *nostris* to our men *aut* either *administrandi* of managing them *aut* or *auxiliandi* of helping them. *Compluribus navibus* several ships *fractis* having been dashed to pieces *quum* when *reliquæ* the rest *essent* were *inutiles* useless *ad navigandum* for sailing, *funibus* the ropes, *anchoris* anchors *reliquisque armamentis* and other equipments *amissis* having been lost, *facta est* there arose *magna perturbatio* a great commotion *totius exercitus* of the whole army (*id quod* a thing which *necesse erat* was necessary *accidere* to happen) *neque enim* for neith *rerant* were there *naves aliæ* other ships *quibus* in which *posset* they could *reportari* be carried back, *et omnia* and all things *deerant* were wanting *quæ* which *usui sunt* are of use *ad reficiendas eas* for refitting them: *et* and *quod* because *constabat* it was known *omnibus* to all *oportere* that it behoved us *hiemare* to winter in *Gallia* in Gaul, *frumentum* corn *in his locis* in these places *non provisum erat* had not been laid up *in hiemem* for the winter.

XXX. *Quibus rebus* which things *cognitis* being known, *principes* the chiefs *Britanniæ* of Britain *qui* who *comvenerant* had come together *post prælium factum* after the battle which was fought *ad ea facienda* to do these things *quæ* which *Cæsar* Cæsar *jusserat* had ordered, *colloquuti* having consulted *inter se* between themselves *quum* when *intelligerent* they perceived *equites* that cavalry *et naves* and ships *et frumentum* and corn *desse* were wanting *Romanis* to the Romans, *et* and *cognoscerent* took notice of *paucitatem* the fewness *militum* of the soldiers *ex exiguitate* by the smallness *castrorum* of the camp, *quæ* which *erant* was *etiam* even *angustiora* narrower *hoc* for this reason *quod* that *Cæsar* Cæsar *transportaverat* had transported *legiones* the

legions *sine impedimentis* without baggage, *duxerunt* they thought *esse* that it was *optimum* best *factu* to be done, *rebellione facta* having made a renewal of the war *prohibere* to hinder *nostros* ourmen *frumento* from getting corn *commeatuque* and provision *et* and *producere* to protract *rem* the affair *in hiemem* into the winter, *quod* because *confidebant* they trusted *iis superatis* that if those were vanquished *aut interclusis* or cut off *reditu* from returning, *neminem* no one *transiturum* would cross *postea* afterwards *in Britanniam* into Britain *causa* for the purpose *inferendi belli* of making war on them. *Itaque* therefore *conjurazione facta* a conspiracy having been made, *cœperunt* they began *rursus* again *paullatim* by degrees *discedere* to depart *ex castris* from the camp *ac* and *deducere* to lead forth *suos* their men *clam* secretly *ex agris* from the fields.

XXXI. *At* but *Cæsar* *Cæsar etsi* although *nondum cognoverat* he had not yet found out *consilia eorum* their design, *tamen* yet *susplicabatur* suspected *et* both *eventu* from the occurrence *navium suarum* of his own ships *et ex eo* and from this circumstance, *quod* that *intermiserant* they had ceased *dare obsides* to give hostages *id* that *fore* would happen *quod* which *accidit* did happen. *Itaque* therefore *comparabat* he prepared *subsidia* remedies *ad omnes casus* for all contingencies. *Nam* for *et* both *conferebat* he carried *frumentum* corn *quotidie* daily *ex agris* from the fields *in castra* into the camp, *et* and *quæ naves* whatever ships *afflictæ erant* had been shattered *gravissime* most seriously *utebatur* he made use of *earum materia* their timber *atque ære* and the brass *ad reficiendas reliquas* for repairing the rest; *et* and *quæ* the things which *erant* were *usui* of use *ad eas res* for those purposes *jubebat* he ordered *comportari* to be brought over *ex continenti* from the continent. *Itaque* therefore *quum* whereas *id* that *administraretur* was managed *a militibus* by the soldiers *summo studio* with the utmost care, *duodecim navibus* only twelve ships *amissis* being lost, *effecit* he

managed *ut* so that *posset navigari* navigation could be carried on *commode* easily *reliquis* by the rest.

XXXII. *Dum* whilst *ea* those things *geruntur* are going on *una legione* one legion *quæ* which *appellabatur* was called *septima* the seventh *missa* having been sent *frumentatum* to forage *ex consuetudine* according to custom, *neque ulla suspicione* nor any suspicion *belli* of war *interposita* coming between *ad id tempus* up to that time *quum* since *pars* part *hominum* of the men *remaneret* remained in *agris* in the fields, *pars etiam* part also *ventitaret* kept coming and going in *castra* into the camp, *ii* those *qui* who *erant* were in *statione* on guard *pro portis* before the gates *castrorum* of the camp *renunciaverunt* reported *Cæsari* to Cæsar, *pulverem majorem* that a greater dust *quam* than *consuetudo* custom *ferret* directed *videri* was seen in *ea parte* in that direction in *quam partem* towards which *legio* the legion *fecisset* had made *iter* its march. *Cæsar* Cæsar, *suspicatus* suspecting *id* that *quod* which *erat* was really the case, *aliquid novi consilii* that some new plot *initum* was entered upon *a barbaris* by the barbarians, *jussit* ordered *cohortes* the cohorts *quæ* which *erant* were in *stationibus* on guard *proficisci* to set out *secum* with him in *eam partem* towards that part; *duas* two *ex reliquis* of the others *succedere* to take their place in *stationem* on guard; *reliquas* the others *armari* to take arms *et subsequi se* and follow him *confestim* immediately. *Quum* when *processisset* he had proceeded *paullo longius* a little farther *a castris* from the camp *animadvertit* he observed *suos* that his own men *premi* were oppressed *ab hostibus* by the enemy *atque* and *ægre* with difficulty *sustinere* stood their ground, *et* and *legione* the legion *conferta* being crowded together *tela* that darts *conjici* were poured upon them *ex omnibus partibus* on all sides. *Nam* for *quod* because *pars una* one part alone *erat reliqua* was left, *omni frumento* all the corn *ex reliquis*

partibus of the other parts *demesso* having been cut down, *hostes* the enemy, *suspicati* suspecting *nostros* that our men *venturos esse* would come *huc* hither, *delituerant* had hidden *noctu* by night in *silvis* in the woods; *tum* then *adorti* attacking them *subito* on a sudden *dispersos* when scattered, *depositis armis* their arms having been laid aside, *occupatos* engaged in *metendo* in reaping, *paucis interfectis* a few having been slain, *perturbaverant* they had disordered *reliquos* the rest, *incertis ordinibus* their ranks being uncertain; *simul* and at the same time *circumdederant* had surrounded them *equitatu* with their cavalry *atque essedis* and chariots.

XXXIII. *Hoc* this *est* is *genus* the manner *pugnæ* of fighting *ex essedis* from chariots: *primo* firstly *per-equitant* they drive round *per omnes partes* over every part of the ground *et conjiciunt* and cast *tela* their weapons *atque* and *ipso terrore* by the very fright *equorum* of the horses *et strepitu* and noise *rotarum* of the wheels *plerumque* generally *perturbant* disturb *ordines* the ranks, *et* and *quum* when *insinuaverint se* they have worked themselves in *inter turmas* among the ranks *equitum* of the cavalry *desiliunt* they leap down *ex essedis* from their chariots *et præliantur* and fight *pedibus* on foot. *Aurigæ* the drivers *interim* in the meantime *excedunt* retire *paullatim* a little *ex prælio* from the battle *atque* and *ita collocant* so station *currus* the chariots, *ut* that *si* if *illi* they *premuntur* are pressed *a multitudine* by a number *hostium* of the enemy *habeant* they may have *expeditum receptum* a quick retreat *ad suos* to their own men. *Ita* thus *præstant* they display *mobilitatem* the swiftness *equitum* of cavalry *stabilitatem* and the firmness *peditum* of infantry in *præliis* in battles *ac* and *quotidiano usu* by daily practice *et exercitatione* and exercise *tantum efficiunt* accomplish so much *uti* that *conseuerint* they are accustomed *in loco* in ground *declivi* sloping *ac præci-*

piti and steep *sustinere* to check *equos* their horses *incitatos* at full gallop, *et brevi* and quickly *moderari* to govern *et fleatere* and turn them, *et percurrere* and run *per temonem* along the pole *et insistere* and stand *in iugo* on the yoke, *et inde* and from thence *citissime* very quickly *recipere se* to leap back *in currus* into the chariots.

XXXIV. *Quibus rebus* by which things, *nostris perturbatis* our men being disturbed *novitate* by the new way *pugna* in fighting, *Cæsar Cæsar tempore opportunissimo* at the most critical moment *tulit* brought *auxilium* help; *namque* for *ejus adventu* at his approach *hostes* the enemy *constiterunt* halted, *nostri* and our men *recepērunt se* recovered *ex timore* from their fright. *Quo facto* which being done, *arbitratus* thinking *alienum esse tempus* that it was an improper time *ad lacessendum* for provoking them *et ad committendum prælium* and for engaging in battle, *continuit se* he kept himself *suo loco* in his place *et brevi tempore* a short space *intermisso* having passed, *reduxit* he led back *legiones* the legions *in castra* into the camp. *Dum* whilst *hæc* these things *geruntur* are going on, *omnibus nostris* all our men *occupatis* being occupied, *reliqui* the rest of the enemy, *qui* who *erant* were *in agris* in the fields, *discesserunt* departed. *Tempestates* storms *sequeutæ sunt* ensued *complures dies continuos* for many days together, *quæ* which *et* both *continèrent* kept *nostros* our men *in castris* in the camp *et prohiberent* and prevented *hostem* the enemy *a pugna* from fighting. *Interim* meanwhile *barbari* the barbarians *dimisserunt* sent round *nuntios* messengers *in omnes partes* into all quarters, *prædicaveruntque* and notified *suis* to their own men *paucitatem* the fewness *nostrorum militum* of our soldiers, *et* and *demonstraverunt* pointed out *quanta facultas* what a great opportunity *præliæ faciendæ* of making booty *atque* and *liberandi sui* of making themselves free *in perpetuum* for ever *daretur* was given *si* if *expulissent* they should drive

out *Romanos* the Romans *castris* from the camp. *His rebus* by these means *magna multitudo* a great multitude *peditatus* of infantry *equitatusque* and cavalry *coacta* having been collected *celeriter* with speed *venerunt* they came *ad castra* to the camp.

XXXV. *Cæsar* Cæsar, *etsi* although *videbat* he saw *idem* that the same thing *fore* would come to pass *quod* which *acciderat* had happened *superioribus diebus* on former occasions, *ut* that *hostes* the enemy, *si* if *essent pulsi* they were routed, *effugerent* would escape *periculum* danger *celeritate* by their swiftness, *tamen* yet *nactus* having obtained *circiter triginta equites* about thirty horse *quos* which *Commius* *Commius Atrebas* the Atrebatian, *de quo* about whom *dictum est* mention has been made *ante* before, *transportaverat* had brought over *secum* with him, *constituit* drew up *legiones* the legions *in acie* in line *pro castris* before the camp. *Commisso prælio* the battle being begun, *hostes* the enemy *non potuerunt* were not able *diutius* long *ferre* to bear *impetum* the attack *nostrorum militum* of our soldiers, *ac* and *verterunt* turned *terga* their backs. *Quos* whom *sequeuti* having followed *tanto spatio* over as great a space *quantum* as *potuerunt* they could *efficere* effect *cursu* by running *et viribus* and strength, *occiderunt* they slew *complures* several *ex iis* of them, *deinde* then *afflictis incensisque omnibus* having demolished and burnt everything *longe lateque* far and wide, *receperunt se* they withdrew themselves *in castra* into the camp.

XXXVI. *Eodem die* the same day *legati* ambassadors *missi* sent *ab hostibus* by the enemy *venerunt* came *ad Cæsarem* to Cæsar *de pace* to treat for peace. *His* to these *Cæsar* Cæsar *duplicavit* doubled *numerum* the number *obsidum* of hostages *quem* which *imperaverat* he had commanded *antea* before *jussitque* and ordered *eos* them *adduci* to be brought over *in continentem* to the continent, *quod* because *die* the day *æquinotii* of the equinox *proxima* being near, *infirmis navibus*

and his ships being shattered, *non existimabat* he did not think *navigacionem* that his voyage *subjiciendam* should be exposed *hiemi* to the winter. *Ipsē* himself *nactus* having obtained *idoneam tempestatem* favourable weather *paullo* a short time *post mediam noctem* after midnight, *solvit* looses *naves* his ships *quæ* which *omnes* all *pervenerunt* arrived *incolumes* safe *ad continentem* at the continent, *sed* but *ex his* of these *duæ cnerariæ* two transports *non potuerunt* were not able *capere* to reach *eisdem portus* the same ports *quos* which *reliquæ* the rest [did] *et* and *delatæ sunt* were carried down *paullo infra* a little lower.

XXXVII. *Ex quibus navibus* out of which vessels *quum* when *militēs* soldiers *circiter tricenti* about three hundred *essent expositi* were landed, *atque* and *contenderent* were making their way *in castra* into the camp, *Morini* the Morini, *quos* whom *Cæsar Cæsar*, *proficis-sens* setting out *in Britanniam* into Britain, *reliquerat* had left *pacatos* tranquillized, *adducti* induced *spe* by the hope *prædæ* of booty, *circumsteterunt* surrounded them *primo* at first *non ita magno numero* with not so very great a number *suorum* of their men, *ac* and *jusserunt* ordered them, *si* if *nollent* they were unwilling *sese* that themselves *interfici* should be slain, *ponere* to lay down *arma* their arms. *Quum* when *illi* they *orbe facto* having made a circle, *defenderent* defended *sese* themselves *celeriter* quickly *circiter sex millia* about six thousand *hominum* of men *convenerunt* assembled *ad clamorem* at the noise. *Qua re nunciata* which thing being told, *Cæsar Cæsar* *misit* sent *omnem equitatum* all the cavalry *ex castris* out of the camp + *auxilio* as a help *suis* to his men. *Interim* meanwhile *nostri milites* our soldiers *sustinuerunt* sustained *impetum* the attack *hostium* of the enemy *atque* and *pugnaverunt* fought *fortissime* most bravely *amplius* more *quatuor horis* than four hours, *et* and *acceptis paucis vulneribus* having received but few wounds, *occiderunt* slew *complures* many *ex iis* of them. *Postea vero*

quam but after that *nostri equitatus* our cavalry *venit* came in *conspectum* into sight *hostes* the enemy, *abjectis armis* throwing away their arms, *verterunt* turned *terga* their backs, *magnusque numerus* and a great number *eorum* of them *occisus est* was slain.

XXXVIII. *Cæsar* Cæsar *postero die* the next day *misit* sent *Titum Labienum* Titus Labienus *legatum* his lieutenant, *cum iis legionibus* with those legions *quas* which *reduxerat* he had brought back *ex Britannia* out of Britain in *Morinos* among the Morini *qui* who *fecerant* had made *rebellionem* the revolt. *Qui* who *quum* when *non haberent* they had not *quo* a place whither *se recipere* they could betake themselves *propter siccitates* on account of the drying up *paludum* of the marshes, *quo perfugio* which place of refuge *fuerant usi* they had used *anno superiore* the year before, *fere omnes* nearly all *venerunt* came in *potes-tatem* into the power *Labieni* of Labienus. At but *Quintus Titurius* Quintus Titurius *et Lucius Cotta* and Lucius Cotta, *legati* the lieutenants *qui* who *duxe-rant* had led *legiones* the legions in *fines* into the boundaries *Menapiorum* of the Menapii, *vastatis om-nibus eorum agris* having laid waste all their lands, *succisis frumentis* and having cut down their corn, *in-censis edificiis* having burnt their buildings, *se recepe-runt* withdrew *ad Cæsarem* to Cæsar, *quod* because *omnes Menapii* all the Menapii *abdiderant se* had hidden themselves in *densissimas silvas* in the recesses of the woods. *Cæsar* Cæsar *constituit* appointed *hi-berna* winter quarters *omnium legionum* for all the legions in *Belgis* among the Belgæ. *Eo* thither *duæ civitates* two states *omnino* in all *miserunt* sent *obsides* hostages *ex Britannia* from Britain; *reliquæ* the rest *neglexerunt* omitted it. *His rebus gestis* these things being done, *ex literis* in consequence of the letters *Cæsaris* of Cæsar, *supplicatio* a thanksgiving *dierum viginti* of twenty days *decreta est* was voted *a senatu* by the senate.